



The New
CAMBRIDGE
English Course

PRACTICE



■ *versión en español*

MICHAEL SMAY
CATHERINE WALTER

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

Lesson 1	May I introduce myself?	6
Lesson 2	Who's who?	7
Lesson 3	My mornings usually start fairly late	9
Lesson 4	How people live	10
Lesson 5	There's a strange light in the sky	11
Lesson 6	Things are changing	12
Summary A	.....	12
Revision A	.....	14
Lesson 7	A true story	17
Lesson 8	I was getting ready to come home	18
Lesson 9	People are different	19
Lesson 10	Things are different	21
Lesson 11	Stuff for cleaning windows	22
Lesson 12	I haven't got anything to wear	23
Summary B	.....	24
Revision B	.....	26
Lesson 13	Have you ever . . . ?	27
Lesson 14	Things have changed	29
Lesson 15	What do you say when you . . . ?	30
Lesson 16	Here is the news	31
Lesson 17	USA holiday	33
Lesson 18	Knife-thrower's assistant wanted	35
Summary C	.....	37
Revision C	.....	38

Lesson 19	Their children will have blue eyes	40
Lesson 20	A matter of life and death	42
Lesson 21	If you see a black cat,	43
Lesson 22	We don't get on well	45
Lesson 23	If I were you,	46
Lesson 24	How about Thursday?	48
Summary D	.....	49
Revision D	.....	50
Lesson 25	From tree to paper	53
Lesson 26	Who? What? Where?	54
Lesson 27	Probability	55
Lesson 28	Somebody with blue eyes	57
Lesson 29	Things	59
Lesson 30	Self and others	60
Summary E	.....	62
Revision E	.....	64
Lesson 31	Before and after	66
Lesson 32	I hadn't seen her for a long time	67
Lesson 33	All right, I suppose so	68
Lesson 34	If he had been bad at maths,	70
Lesson 35	Travel	71
Lesson 36	Shall I open it for you?	73
Summary F	.....	74
Revision F	.....	76
Mini-grammar	.....	78
Additional reading	.....	108
Key to Exercises	.....	116
Acknowledgements	.....	134

1 May I introduce myself?

1 Fill in the gaps in the conversations.

TOM: Jake,1..... like to2..... my friend Alice.
 ALICE: How3.....?
 JAKE: How4.....?
 ANN: Andy,5..... is Louise.
 ANDY: Hello, Louise. I'm6..... to7..... you.
 JOE: Hello, Phil. How8.....?
 PHIL: Fine,9....., Joe.10..... to see you again.
 CATHY: Janet,11..... Susan?
 JANET: No. How do you do? I've heard12..... much13..... you.
 JUDY:14..... I introduce15.....? My16..... Judy Gower.
 RUTH: Hello. I'm Ruth Collins. I'm sorry, I didn't17..... your name.
 KATE: Where are you from?
 MARK: Canada.
 KATE:18..... in Canada?
 MARK: Toronto.
 STEVE:19..... me.20..... you Liz Bush?
 LIZ: Yes, that's21.....

2 Match the questions and the answers.

1. What nationality are you?
 2. What sports do you do?
 3. What kind of music do you like?
 4. What kind of books do you read?
 5. Are you shy?
 6. Can you play the piano?
 7. What do you like doing in your spare time?
 8. Why are you learning English?
 9. Where do you live?
 10. Do you like watching football matches?
 11. What does your father look like?
 12. What's your mother like?
 13. Have you got any sisters or brothers?
 14. How do you feel about snakes?
- a. Knitting and reading.
 - b. Mostly novels; sometimes history books.
 - c. Austrian.
 - d. She's very calm and cheerful.
 - e. In a small town near Vienna.
 - f. No, I'm fairly self-confident.
 - g. They don't interest me.
 - h. I prefer playing games to watching them.
 - i. Classical music.
 - j. He's tall and fair.
 - k. Long-distance running.
 - l. I'd like to travel more, and I think it's a useful language.
 - m. Yes, two sisters.
 - n. Yes, but not very well.

3 Here are some answers. What are the questions?

1. Carlos Peña.
2. Venezuela.
3. I'm an engineer.
4. 25.
5. One metre seventy-eight.
6. Two brothers and a sister.
7. No, I'm not.
8. In a small flat in Caracas.
9. I need to read it for my work.
10. No, but I can speak a little French.
11. I watch TV or I go out with friends.
12. No, I don't, but I like dancing.
13. About twice a week.

4 Vocabulary revision. Complete the lists and answer the questions.

1. Monday, Tu....., W.....,,,,
2. January, Feb....., M.....,,,,
3. What day(s) do you have English lessons?
4. What day(s) do you NOT go to any classes?
5. What day is/was your birthday this year?
6. What month is your birthday?
7. What month is your father's birthday?
8. What month is your mother's birthday?
9. What is the coldest month in your country?
10. What is the hottest month in your country?

5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 1, Exercise 1. Listen and repeat. Try for good intonation.



6 Read this. The first time you read it, don't look up more than ten words in the dictionary.

A: People who are learning to be family therapists do this exercise very early in their course. They're put together in a room and asked to choose another person from the group who makes them think of someone in their family; or who they think could belong in their family. And – here's the interesting bit – they're not allowed to talk at all while they're choosing. They just stand up and walk around looking at all the others. When everybody has chosen somebody, they talk together for a time, to see if they can find out if their families are similar. Then each pair, without talking, chooses another pair, to make groups of four. Then they talk together about what it was in their family backgrounds that led to their decisions. And finally, they report to all the others what they've discovered.

B: Which is?

A: That they've all, somehow, picked out three people whose families functioned in very similar ways to their own.

B: What do you mean, 'functioned in very similar ways'?

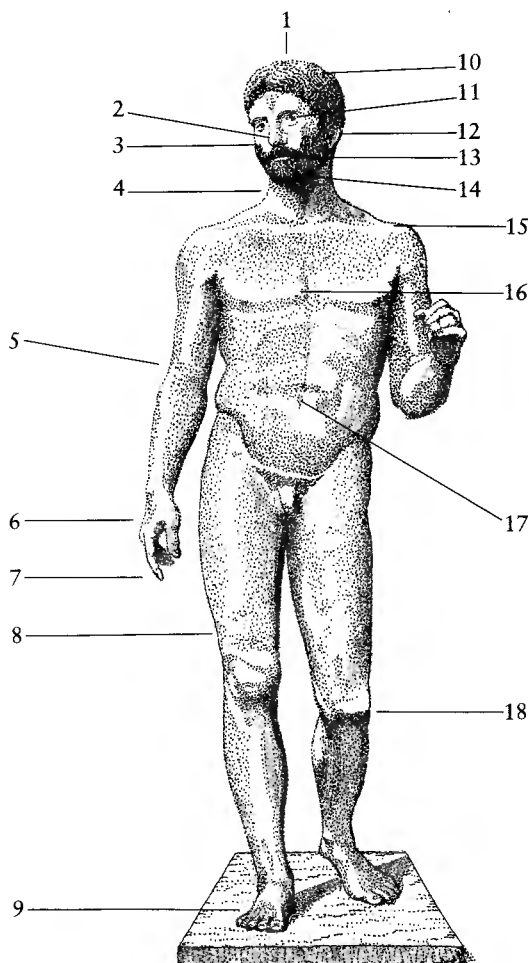
A: Well, all four come from families where there was difficulty in sharing affection; or perhaps in expressing anger; or where everyone was expected always to be optimistic and cheerful. Or they might find out that all four of them were from families where the father was away from home a lot of the time; or that they all suffered some sort of important loss or change at about the same age. And this tells us something about why people fall in love with one another!

(Adapted from *Families and how to survive them*
by Robin Skynner and John Cleese)

2 Who's who?

1 Put the right words with the different parts of the body. Use your dictionary to find out more words for parts of the body if you want to.

arm	beard	chest	ear	eye	face
finger	foot	hair	hand	head	knee
leg	mouth	neck	nose	shoulder	
stomach					



2 Read the advertisement with a dictionary, copy some of the questions and write true answers.
Example:

Are you young and fit? Yes, I am.

Are you young and fit? Are you interested in people? Have you got a nice voice? Can you speak two or more languages? Can you swim? Have you got your own car? Can you go for a long time without sleep? Are you patient with children? Are you good at maths? Can you play a musical instrument? If you can answer yes to all these questions, write to Box 4762 for details of a wonderful job opportunity.

3 Make questions as in the examples.

Those houses are expensive. (*big*)

Are those houses big?

All the family can speak French. (*Spanish*)

Can all the family speak Spanish?

Alice has got a dog. (*horse*)

Has Alice got a horse?

1. Her little girl can sing. (*dance*)
2. The room is comfortable. (*expensive*)
3. The police have got his description. (*name*)
4. The film is very interesting. (*long*)
5. His sister has got blue eyes. (*fair hair*)
6. Everybody has got something to drink. (*eat*)
7. Sally can play the piano. (*guitar*)
8. The lessons are useful. (*interesting*)
9. Jake can swim very fast. (*run*)
10. Her new boyfriend is very nice. (*intelligent*)

4 Have you got everything you want? No? What haven't you got? Write some sentences. Examples:

I haven't got a raincoat.

I haven't got any English friends.

I haven't got many nice clothes.

I haven't got enough books.

5 As quickly as you can, look through the texts and match the descriptions with the pictures on page 10 of the Student's Book. Time limit: 3 minutes.

1 the police are looking for a man of about 20, of average height, with short fair hair, green eyes and a large nose. When last seen, he was wearing a blue sweater and grey

Address: 43 Park End Road, Leamington.

Date and place of birth: 21.6.1970, London.

Present age: 20

Height: 1m 62

Weight: 58kg

Colour of hair: dark brown

Colour of eyes: brown

2 Education:

3

Although we haven't met yet, I feel we're friends already.

It's so kind of you to offer to meet me at the station on the 12.45 train from Coventry. I haven't got a photo to send you, but I'm easy to recognise - I'm very tall and thin, I've got dark hair and brown eyes, and I wear big glasses. I'm looking forward very much to meeting you.

Yours,

5 Can you speak two or more languages? Are you a good listener? Do you like music, theatre and walking? If so, perhaps you are the woman for me. Good-looking, intelligent, interesting man, young 45, seeks beautiful cultured woman for serious relationship. Write Box 363, *Daily News*.

4

very pretty, with long fair hair and a big warm smile. It's funny, she thinks her nose is too big, but I think it's just right. She's got a great sense of humour, she's full of life and she can dance all night. I think

6 January last year. At 43, she is the youngest Minister in the new government. Educated at Rumbold Comprehensive and Leeds University, she entered politics in her twenties and became a Member of Parliament at 28. She is married, and has three children. Her husband is a local government officer, and

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 2, Exercise 1. Listen to the recording and try to write down everything Polly says.

3 My mornings usually start fairly late

1 Write the correct forms of the verbs.

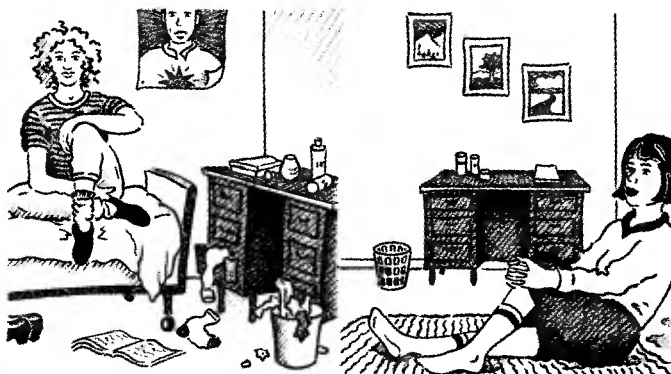
1. My father always Sunday dinner. (*make*)
2. Ruth eggs; they her ill. (*not eat; make*)
3. 'Have you got a light, by any chance?' 'Sorry, I'. (*smoke*)
4. Where Mark to school? (*go*)
5. your parents your girlfriend? (*like*)
6. How often you swimming? (*go*)
7. Where your sister? (*work*)
8. Ann usually lunch. (*not have*)
9. Who the ironing in your house? (*do*)
10. We out during the week. (*not go*)
11. My uncle a lot. (*worry*)
12. Veronica *Mastermind* every week. (*watch*)

2 Rewrite the sentences, adding the frequency adverbs.

1. I get up quite early on Saturdays. (*usually*)
2. My son goes to school on Saturday morning. (*normally*)
3. My daughter goes to a gym club. (*quite often*)
4. After gym club, we go to the bakery for fresh cakes. (*almost always*)
5. In the afternoon, the children's father takes them somewhere like a museum or a zoo. (*often*)
6. We try to go away and visit friends. (*once a month*)
7. On Sundays, I get up before ten. (*hardly ever*)
8. I go to church, but my husband does. (*never; sometimes*)
9. We have guests for Sunday lunch. (*quite often*)
10. We visit my father and mother. (*every week*)

3 Look at the two pictures. How often do you think they do the things in the box? Examples:

Chris tidies her room once every six months.
Lucy brushes her teeth three times a day.



Chris

Lucy

wash hair	tidy room	go to hairdresser's
empty wastepaper basket		change socks
have bath	change bed	brush teeth

4 Read the text without using a dictionary, and try to match the pictures and the words. Then you can use your dictionary if you want.



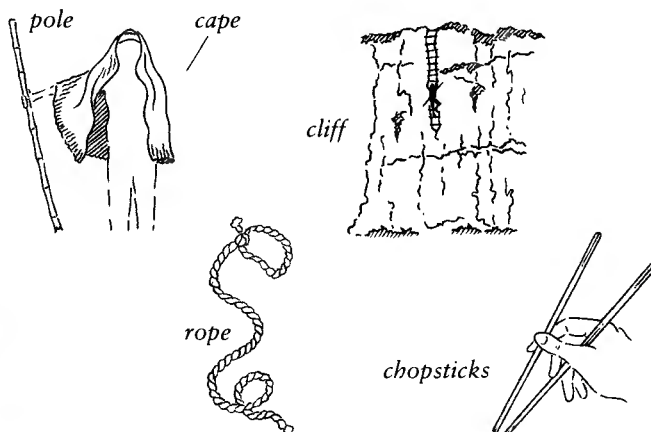
His name is Mani Lal. Like his father and his grandfathers in central Nepal, he is a honey hunter. With only a rope round his waist, he hangs over a 120-metre cliff on a rope ladder to harvest the sweet treasure of *Apis laboriosa*, the world's largest honeybee.

Thousands of angry bees fill the air as he pushes a bamboo pole into their nest. But over his everyday shirt he wears only a loose cape on his head and a pair of old trousers given to him by a cousin serving in the British army.

Using his poles like enormous Japanese chopsticks, he cuts thick pieces of honeycomb into a bamboo basket lined with the skin of a wild goat. When the basket is full, he lowers it to his friends at the bottom of the cliff.

The sound of the giant bees is frightening, but Mani Lal moves quickly and calmly. He has done this many times. He is 64 years old.

(from an article by E. Valli and D. Summers, *National Geographic magazine*)



5 How do you spend your weekend? Write 100 words or more.

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 3, Exercise 1 (only part of Rufus's monologue is recorded here). Listen, and try to write everything down.

4 How people live

1 Make at least six sentences.

In Italy
In Britain
In China
etc.

people often eat
people often drink

tea
rice
spaghetti
etc.

2 Change these sentences as in the examples.

She doesn't like hot weather. (cold)
→ *She likes cold weather.*

They eat fish. (X meat)
→ *They don't eat meat.*

He works on Saturdays. (? Sundays)
→ *Does he work on Sundays?*

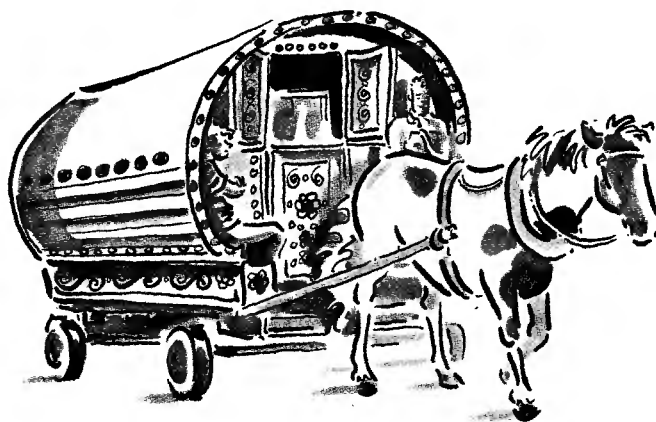
1. He lives in a tent. (X house)
2. They work at home. (X office)
3. It always rains there in winter. (? summer)
4. She doesn't speak Chinese. (Japanese)
5. We like Ann and Peter. (X their children)
6. You play football. (? tennis)
7. He often travels to America. (X Africa)
8. He doesn't eat in restaurants. (at home)
9. He cooks for himself. (X other people)
10. She knows how to make friends.
(X make money)
11. She doesn't like pop music.
(classical music)
12. He reads a lot. (? novels)
13. The train runs on Mondays and Wednesdays.
(? Fridays)
14. The price doesn't include service. (tax)
15. Our cat eats meat. (X fish)

3 Practise saying these words with the correct stress.

desert Australia Brazil climate January
village around vegetable animal difficult

4 Write a few sentences for an Amazon Indian or an Australian aborigine, to tell him/her how you live.

5 Read this, using a dictionary where necessary.



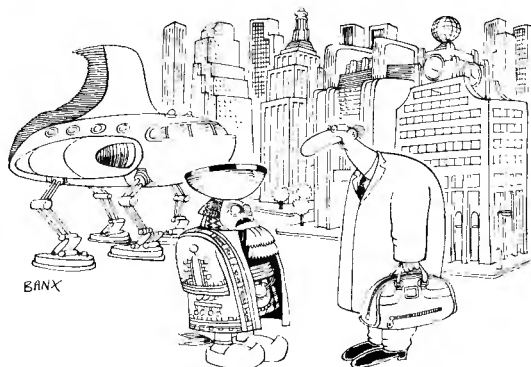
GYPSIES

Around the year 1000 AD, some people from north-west India began to travel westwards – nobody knows why. After leaving their homes, they did not settle down again, but spent their lives moving from one place to another.

Their descendants are called the Romany people, or Gypsies. There are Gypsies all over the world, and many of them are still travelling, with no fixed homes. There are about eight million of them, including three million in eastern Europe.

Gypsies sometimes have a hard time in the countries where they travel. Because they are different, people may be afraid of them, look down on them, or think that they are criminals. The Nazis persecuted the Gypsies, like the Jews, and nobody knows how many of them died in Hitler's death camps.

Gypsies have their own language, Romany. They like music and dancing, and they often work in fairs and circuses. Travelling is very important to them, and many Gypsies are unhappy if they have to stay in one place. Because of this, it is difficult for Gypsy children to go to school, and Gypsies are often illiterate. In some places, the education authorities try to arrange special travelling schools for Gypsy children, so that they can get the same education as other children.



"Well, seeing as you ask, this is the National Costume of Uranus."

5 There's a strange light in the sky

1 Read the commentary and decide where to put the verbs from the box.

... and Mrs Rask's car1..... in front of the palace. This is a historic moment – as I am sure you know, she is the first Fantasian president to visit our country since 1954. President and Mrs Martin2..... down the steps to welcome her. And now the car has stopped, and Mrs Rask3..... out. There seems to be some problem with the door. No, it's all right. President Martin and Mrs Rask4..... hands – and the crowds5..... crazy – people6..... and shouting. What an occasion this is! And now Mrs Martin7..... to the Fantasian president. I expect she8..... if she had a good journey. The Fantasian president9..... Mrs Martin – I don't know what she10....., but I think she11..... a joke – everybody's laughing. Now President Martin12..... the Foreign Minister and his staff to our distinguished visitor. I must say that Mrs Rask13..... beautiful – she14..... Fantasian national costume: a long green and gold silk dress with a lovely pattern of flowers, and a tall red hat. President and Mrs Martin are dressed very simply, as usual: he's wearing a dark blue suit with a light blue shirt and black tie, and Mrs Martin is wearing a brown tweed skirt with a white blouse and light brown shoes. What an experience this is! What a historic moment! And now they15..... and going inside the palace. The President is leading the way ...

are cheering	are coming	are going
are shaking	're turning	is answering
's asking	is getting	is introducing
is looking	's making	's saying
is stopping	is talking	's wearing

2 Imagine that an important person is visiting your home town or your school. Write a short commentary (like the text in Exercise 1).

3 Make questions. Be careful of the word order.
Example:

Where | the President and his wife | standing
→ *Where are the President and his wife standing?*
(NOT *Where are standing the President ... ?*)

1. What | Mrs Andrews | writing
2. What | that girl | eating
3. Why | those old men | singing
4. Why | the car | making a funny noise
5. What | Mrs Harris | trying to say
6. Where | your aunt | working just now
7. Dr Parker | working | today
8. your TV | working all right

4 Write some sentences to say what you are *not* doing at this moment.

5 Do you know the names of all these articles of clothing? Use your dictionary to help you.



6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 5, Exercise 1. Listen to the recording and write down five or more phrases or sentences that give different information from the pictures in Student's Book Exercise 1. Example:

with the score at Spain 8, England 1

6 Things are changing

1 How are you changing?

(Are you getting fatter / thinner / taller / richer / poorer / better at English / more tired / happier / unhappier / more beautiful / more handsome / more intelligent / . . . ?)

2 Complete the sentences with some of these words and expressions.

are getting	are going	army	average
changing	fast	height	is getting
is happening	price	problem	slowly
unemployed	worse		

1. The of petrol is going up again.
2. Three years ago there were two million people without jobs. Now there are over three million
3. The housing problem is getting
4. Food prices up.
5. Things are changing very these days.
6. Restaurants more and more expensive.
7. In 1981, the cost of a good meal for two, with wine, was £25.
8. There are 300,000 men in the
9. What? I can't see.

3 Make questions with *getting* or *going* about these things:

1. the price of drinking water
Why is the price of drinking water going up?
2. inflation
How fast is inflation going down?
3. my mother's cold
Is your mother's cold getting better?
4. the number of university students
5. my sister's husband
6. the baby's weight
7. Sunday newspapers
8. the number of road accidents
9. the price of air tickets
10. the Atlantic Ocean

4 Which one is different? Why? Example:

milk tomato steak chair wine

Chair - not food or drink

1. milk wine water juice apple
2. chair TV fridge bus sofa
3. chair TV fridge sofa armchair
4. tall intelligent fair handsome
5. divorced married single happy
6. April February Thursday September
7. Africa America Japan Europe Asia
8. airport kitchen bathroom bedroom

5 Read this with a dictionary.

WE ARE GETTING HAPPIER

People are getting happier. According to a recent report from the Western Statistics Office, 73% of people say that they are happy 'most of the time', compared with only 47% at the beginning of the century. Perhaps this is partly because the world is less crowded: the Western population is going down by about 1.3% per year. And life expectancy is increasing: in 1970, men lived for an average of 69 years and women 75; both sexes now can expect to live for 113 years. We are getting richer, too. The average income in 2096 was 146,000 Western Credits – twice as much as in the year 2018.

The biochemical revolution is nearly complete: 94% of the population is now green. (For some reason only 83% have green hair, but scientists expect to solve the last remaining problems by the year 2100.)

Not everything is getting better, though. The climate is still changing for the worse, and sea levels are continuing to rise. If average temperatures go on increasing, scientists are afraid that more of the world's capitals will go the same way as London, Paris and New York. Perhaps one day we will all have to move to the mountains.

Religious belief is becoming much less common. In 2018, 65% of Western Federation citizens said that they believed in God; in 2096 the figure was only 24%, and only half of these went to church regularly. (Figures from the WSO Annual Report, July 2098)

(From *The Times*, 18 July 2098)

6 Write a similar report from *The Times* for 18 July 2198.

Summary A

1 Write these numbers in words.

1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 8th
9th 12th 20th 100th

2 Write the contractions.

is not *isn't*

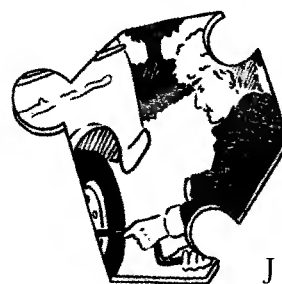
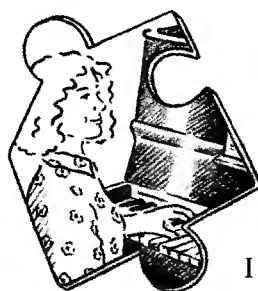
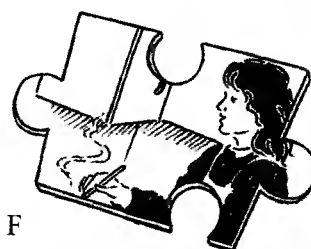
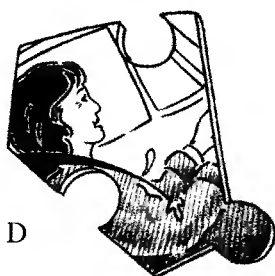
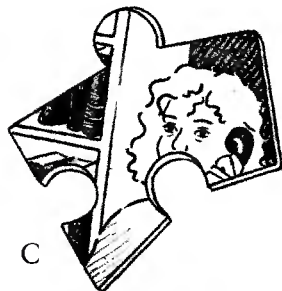
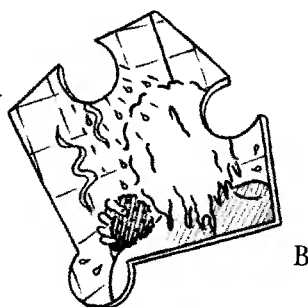
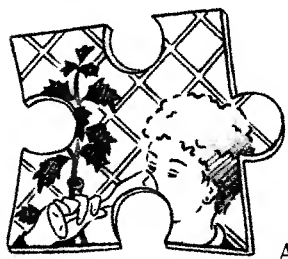
was not I have she has she is I would
you are do not does not cannot I will

3 Write the third-person singular forms.

stop stops... start starts...

see like work catch lie finish pass hurry send go

4 Here are pieces of some pictures. What do you think the woman is doing in each one?



A. She is drinking a glass of wine.

B.

5 Complete the text with the words and expressions from the box.

always	beautiful	blue	each other	forget
girlfriend	her	is doing	laughed	listen
long	fair	neither	nor	nose
quite	Shakespeare's	smile	tired	worked

My first real1..... was a very2..... girl called Penny. She was3..... tall,4..... slim5..... fat, with a lovely figure. She had6.....,7..... hair and8..... eyes, a funny short9....., and a wide mouth with a wonderful10....., like the sun coming out. Her voice was soft and nice to11..... to. She had a great sense of humour, and we12..... a lot. At nights she13..... as a nurse in a mental hospital, and she was often very14..... when we saw15....., but she was16..... fun to be with. She was a very talented actress, and I will never17..... her playing Hermione in a student production of18..... *Winter's Tale*. Penny was a lovely19....., and I was lucky to know20..... I often wonder what she21..... now.

6 Write a description of yourself or of somebody you like. Use some words and expressions from Exercise 5.

I'm tall and fair, with blue eyes and a small nose. My feet are quite big, but I think I'm quite nice-looking. I like dancing and listening to music.

Revision A

1 Is or has?

1. She's 37.
2. It's late.
3. He's 1m 85cm tall.
4. What's he done?
5. She's got blue eyes.
6. He's wearing a dark suit.
7. She's hungry.
8. He's cold.
9. He's married.
10. What colour's your new car?
11. She's gone to London.
12. She's tired.

2 Put in one of these words.

somebody	anybody	everybody	nobody
something	anything	everything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	everywhere	nowhere

1. can speak all the languages in the world.
2. I think there's at the door.
3. 'Where are my keys?' 'I've seen them, but I can't remember where.'
4. Have you got to eat?
5. Does know where I put my glasses?
6. You can find Coca-Cola
7. I need to read – have you got a paper?
8. I'm bored – there's to do.
9. needs love.
10. He and his wife always tell each other
11. 'Come and see a film with us.' 'I don't want to go
12. 'Where can I find a good job with plenty of money and no work?' '.....'
13. 'Mary's here.' 'I don't want to see
14. They're a very loving couple. They go together.
15. 'Do you know Sid?' 'Yes, knows Sid.'
16. 'Is all right?' 'Yes, thanks – no problems.'
17. I can't find my coat
18. 'Did telephone yesterday?' 'No,
19. I can't understand she says – not a word.
20. 'What would you like?' '..... just now, thank you.'

3 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. Look! It again. (*rain*)
2. It always when I want to go for a walk. (*rain*)
3. 'What you?' 'I a letter.' (*do; write*)
4. 'What you?' 'I'm an electrical engineer.' (*do*)
5. '..... you fish?' 'Not very much.' (*like*)
6. 'Have you got a cigarette?' 'Sorry, I ' (*not smoke*)
7. 'What time you up?' 'At seven o'clock, usually.' (*get*)
8. 'Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?' 'Sorry, I with Bill.' (*play*)
9. I most Saturday mornings. (*work*)
10. 'Is your father here?' 'No, he ' (*shop*)

4 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Revision Lesson A, Listening Exercise 2. Listen to the story and decide whether these sentences are true or false.

1. You're walking along a beach. (*True*)
2. It's a cold day. (*False*)
3. You're walking quite fast.
4. You sit down on the sand.
5. You throw four stones into the water.
6. You walk into the water.
7. An old man walks out of the sea.
8. He's got beautiful long hair.
9. You close your eyes for a few minutes.
10. You see him walking away.
11. You go to a large house.
12. When you wake up you see the man again.



"That funny noise is getting louder."

5 Read the text. Use a dictionary if it is really necessary. Then decide which picture shows the woman's dream.

(This is from a science fiction story. A woman who lives on a distant planet, millions of miles away from the earth, is talking to her husband.)

"I dreamed about a man."

"A man?"

"A tall man, six feet one inch tall."

"How absurd; a giant, a misshapen giant."

"Somehow" – she tried the words – "he looked all right. In spite of being tall. And he had – oh, I know you'll think it silly – he had *blue* eyes!"

"Blue eyes! Gods!" cried Mr K. "What'll you dream next? I suppose he had *black* hair?"

"How did you *guess*?" She was excited.

"I picked the most unlikely colour," he replied coldly.

"Well, black it was!" she cried. "And he had a very white skin; oh, he was *most* unusual! He was dressed in a strange uniform and he came down out of the sky and spoke pleasantly to me." She smiled.

"Out of the sky; what nonsense!"

"He came in a metal thing that glittered in the sun," she remembered. She closed her eyes to shape it again.

"I dreamed there was the sky and something sparkled like

a coin thrown in the air, and suddenly it grew large and fell down softly to land, a long silver craft, round and alien. And a door opened in the side of the silver object and this tall man stepped out. He looked at me and he said 'I've come from the third planet in my ship. My name is Nathaniel York –'"

"A stupid name; it's no name at all," objected the husband.

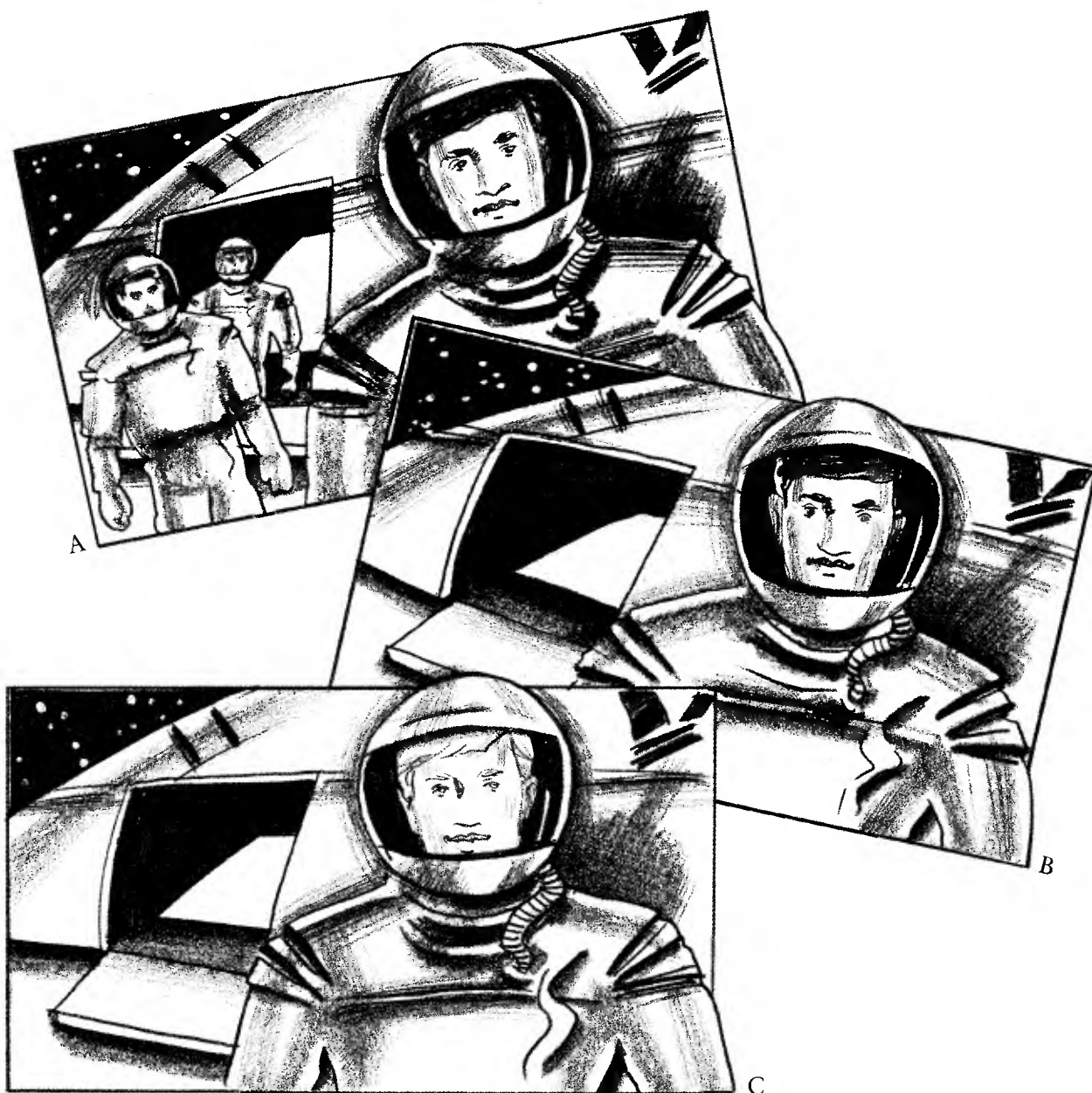
"Of course it's stupid, because it's a dream," she explained softly. "And he said, 'This is the first trip across space. There are only two of us in our ship, myself and my friend Bert.'"

"Another stupid name."

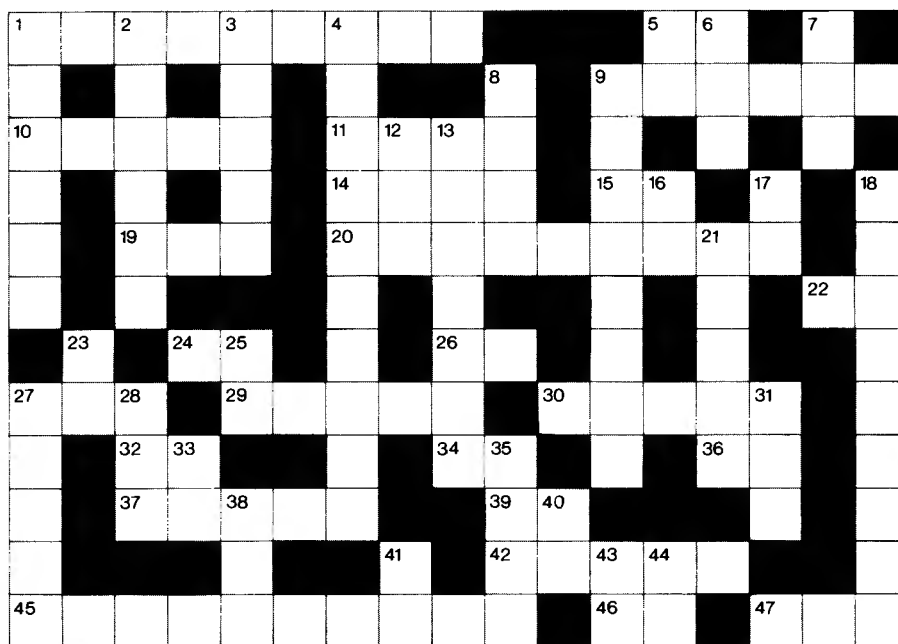
"And he said, 'We're from a city on *Earth*; that's the name of our planet,'" continued Mrs K. "That's what he said."

Mr K turned away. She stopped him with a word. "Yll?" she called quietly. "Do you ever wonder if – well, if there are people living on the third planet?"

(from *The Martian Chronicles* by Ray Bradbury)



6 Try the crossword.



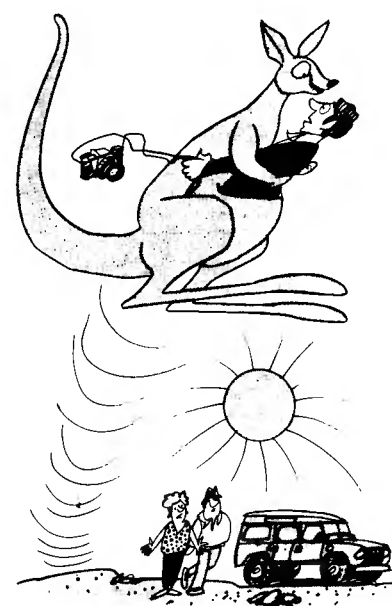
ACROSS

1. May I myself? My name's Sue Carter.
5. Her hair is the same colour mine.
9. Dogs, horses, tigers and elephants are alls.
10. Not long.
11. Sally and Phil love other very much.
14. 1.6 kilometres.
15. Would you like dance?
19. The strange creature's holding a and pointing it at me.
20. How do you this word?
22. You and I.
24. Hello.
26. That man.
27. Goodbye.
29. Perhaps.
30. The opposite of *white*.
32. I usually work home.
34. 'It's getting very late.' '..... what?'
36. The same as 26 *across*.
37. Not square.
39. Negative answer.
42. A bad thing to happen when you're driving.
45. What's the between *strange* and *foreign*?
46. 'I hate golf.' '..... do I.'
47. Not wet.

DOWN

1. Not outside.
2. She's very pretty. Her eyes are a bit small,
3. How do you travel by air?
4. Without a job.
5. He's architect.
6. Please down.
7. A kind of 9 *across*.
8. What's he like,?
9. 'Nice to see you again, John.' '....., my name's Peter.'
12. by = by plane.
13. coat, trousers, blouse, pants, shirt, *etc.*
16. Are you doing anything Tuesday?
17. Excuse
18. All the people.
21. I'm sorry. I didn't your name.
23. 'How did you get here?' '..... train.'
25. I am.
27. A kind of food.
28. You've got one on each side of your head.
31. You can open things with this.
33. 'What's the time?' 'Twenty three.'
35. 'How often do you see Harry?' 'About a week.'

38. You can a dictionary if necessary.
40. Would you like tea coffee?
41. We live a small flat on the third floor.
43. The same 5 *across*.
44. 34 *across* is the same as 46 *across*, and is 44 *down*.



"Poor Fred, we just stopped to take a photograph, and it was love at first sight."

7 A true story

1 Read the text and fill in the gaps with words from the two lists.

(There have been many reports of 'UFOs' – unidentified flying objects – over the last few years. Many people believe that these UFOs come from other worlds, far away in space. Here is one report from an American newspaper.)

On June 14th, in Carmel, Indiana, a woman1..... a large strange bright light moving around in the sky. The woman, Mrs Dora Gabb, 34,1..... the police2.....1..... to Patrolman Conrad Brown,2.....1..... straight to her house to investigate.2..... he arrived there was nothing to be seen,2..... ten minutes later Mrs Gabb's 14-year-old daughter Leslie1..... into the house screaming. Leslie1.....2..... she and a girlfriend were riding on motor-bicycles in the woods2..... they1..... 'a large object, bigger than a house' directly in front of them, low in the sky. It1..... a green top, white sides, a reddish purple tail, and lights of purple, green, gold, red and blue. It1..... no sound. The girls' bicycles1..... working,2..... the girls '.....1..... strange'. The spaceship1..... down lower,2.....1..... for some time about 100 feet above the ground, not moving.2....., with a whistling sound, it1..... at high speed.

LIST 1

Put the past tenses of these verbs into the gaps marked '1'.

come	come	feel	have
leave	make	phone	run
see	see	say	speak
stay	stop		

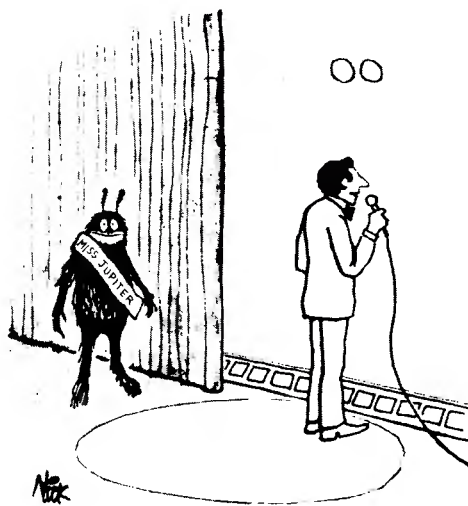
LIST 2

Put these words into the gaps marked '2'.

and	and	and	but
that	then	when	when
who			



"I knew she was going out with a coloured chap, but never thought it was green."



"... and the next contestant hoping to become Miss Universe ..."

2 This is part of a conversation between a policeman and a young woman. Fill in the gaps. The words in the box will help you.

arrive	do	go	make	see	stop	take	telephone
travel	watch						

POLICEMAN: What time1..... work yesterday?

WOMAN: I don't know. About half past five.

POL: And where2..... after that?

WOMAN: I went straight home.

POL: I see. How3..... home? By bus?

WOMAN: Yes.

POL: What bus4.....?

WOMAN: I don't remember.

POL: All right. What time5..... home?

WOMAN: Oh, around six, I suppose.

POL:6..... anybody you knew on the way?

WOMAN: I don't think so. I don't remember.

POL: What7..... when you got home?

WOMAN: Made a cup of tea and put the TV on.

POL: Oh, yes. What programme8.....?

WOMAN: 'Front page'.

POL: 'Front page' wasn't on last night.

WOMAN: I've got it recorded on video.

POL: I see.9..... any phone calls?

WOMAN: Pardon?

POL:10..... anybody?

WOMAN: I might have done. I don't remember.

3 Write sentences with *not*.

1. Beethoven wrote symphonies. (*books*)
Beethoven did not write books.
2. I went to the seaside last weekend. (*the mountains*)
3. It snowed yesterday. (*rain*)
4. I enjoyed the food at the restaurant. (*the wine*)
5. I found the shoes I wanted. (*the sweater*)
6. My mother lived abroad when she was young. (*in Britain*)
7. She fell in love with an American. (*an Englishman*)
8. Her parents wanted her to marry an Englishman. (*the American*)
9. She did what she wanted. (*what her parents wanted*)

4 Write the past tense forms of these infinitives. If you have problems, turn to page 83 of the Mini-grammar in the back of the Practice Book for some rules.

1. play start show watch work
2. hate hope like use
3. shop stop
4. carry try worry

5 Write down five things that you did not do yesterday.

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 7, Exercise 5. Listen, and write down as much as you can.

8 I was getting ready to come home . . .

1 Read the dialogue (Student's Book Exercise 1) again. Then complete the following conversation.

- ANN: Hello, darling.1..... a nice day?
- PAT: So-so. John came in this morning, and said he2..... to talk to me.
- ANN: What3.....?
- PAT: Oh, his marriage, as4..... We5..... lunch together, and we had a long6....., and he said he felt better.
- ANN: Where7..... have lunch? Somewhere8.....?
- PAT: No, we went to the pub round the9..... I just had a beer and a sandwich. Then in the afternoon Alice phoned and talked10..... hours. Just11..... I was trying to do some12.....
- ANN: I *am* sorry. It13..... like a difficult day.
- PAT: Well, it was quite interesting, but I14..... get much work done.

2 Put in the right tense (Simple Past or Past Progressive).

1. When I the house, I some old letters. (*clean; find*)
2. The doorbell while I a bath. (*ring; have*)
3. We an accident when we back from holiday. (*have; come*)
4. When I looked out of the window, I that it (*realise; rain*)
5. I my wife when we in Washington. (*meet; live*)
6. I at a garage because the car badly. (*stop; run*)
7. I suddenly of you while I (*think; wash up*)
8. She to sleep while I her about my holidays. (*go; tell*)
9. When I up, water through the ceiling. (*look; come*)

3 Revision. Put in the right prepositions. (Sometimes no preposition is necessary.)

1. She works nine five except Saturdays.
2. I was born the first day of spring.
3. Can you come and stay with us August?
4. What are you doing this evening?
5. I'm working until seven, but I'm free that.
6. We're going to Morocco in May three weeks.
7. Let's go walking the weekend.
8. Are you free next Monday?
9. I'll see you eight o'clock.
10. I always work better the morning than the afternoon.

4 Write these times in another way.

- 3.15 *a quarter past three*
- 4.50 *ten to five*
- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 6.30 | 7.25 | 2.45 | 4.40 |
| 9.55 | 10.00 | 1.20 | 8.05 |

5 Copy the letter and put in correct punctuation marks and capital letters.

dear kumiko

i'm sorry i didn't come and see you today but things have been awful i didn't hear my alarm clock so i got up late then just as i was running out of the house i fell and hurt my knee i had to go to the hospital and wait a very long time three people who had been in a serious car crash came in while i was waiting and of course they had to go straight in before me the doctor says nothing is broken but i mustn't stand up much for the next two or three weeks which is not very easy this is why i am writing this note which peter is delivering for me i will let you know when i am better and perhaps you can come round for a meal

i wonder if you could post me the book i lent you in november i need it for some work i am trying to do while i can't move around much do you remember which one i'm talking about you borrowed it when you were writing that paper for your english class if you could post it tomorrow or wednesday i will get it by friday

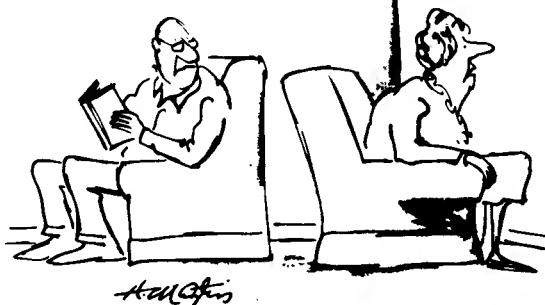
i hope everything is going well and that the person who was making life difficult for you at work has realised how silly she's being

love

angela

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 8, Exercise 1 (only the first part of the conversation is recorded here). Listen and write down at least ten words that have the letter **a** in them. Check with Student's Book Exercise 1.

"Hello, wall. Did you have a good day today? My big news is I discovered a new miracle washday product that has me all excited . . ."



9 People are different

1 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. I have got blue eyes, and so my mother.
2. I haven't got a car, and neither my husband.
3. English is a difficult language, and so Russian.
4. Today's weather isn't very nice, and neither yesterday's.
5. She can swim very well, and so her sister.
6. I can't dance very well, and neither my boyfriend.
7. Alice likes riding, and so Phil.
8. Marie doesn't speak English, and neither Dominique.
9. Shakespeare lived in the 17th century, and so Milton.
10. We didn't go to the meeting, and neither most of the other people.

2 Put in *as* or *than*.

1. A diamond is harder iron.
2. Wales is not as big Scotland.
3. I work in the same office my brother.
4. On average, women live longer men.
5. Cheese has more calories bread.
6. England is not nearly as big New Zealand.
7. She plays much better I do.
8. Your eyes are almost the same colour mine.
9. I think football is far more interesting tennis.
10. Eat much you like.

3 Look back at the pictures on pages 124 and 126 of your Student's Book, and complete these sentences with words from the box.

as both less more neither so than

- Elizabeth is holding a book, and is Jeanne.
- Elizabeth is slimmer Jeanne.
- of the women are sitting down.
- Elizabeth is not holding a pen, and is Jeanne.
- Jeanne has got a hat on, and has Elizabeth.
- Elizabeth looks happy Jeanne.
- Jeanne has not got gloves on, and has Elizabeth.
- Elizabeth's clothes look expensive Jeanne's.
- Elizabeth is not old Jeanne.
- Jeanne isn't wearing a jacket, and is Elizabeth.

4 Fill in the gaps with words from the box.

as as as much as better both both of them
from he him like more more than than
that that which

Helen could not decide1..... of the boys she liked best.2..... were old friends of hers, and they3..... had nice personalities. Rob was4..... similar to her, perhaps. He had the same interests5..... her, and they enjoyed doing things together. She was a bit older6.....7....., but that was not very important. He was very grown-up and mature, and much more self-confident8..... John. She was very fond of him, and she knew9..... he loved her. Only she was not sure10..... he loved her11..... John. John was very different12..... her – he was not really13..... anybody else she had ever met – and that made him14..... interesting, in a way. He had travelled more than her, and15..... could talk for hours about places that she had never seen. He was16.....-looking than Rob, too – taller and stronger. And his eyes were the same colour17..... the sea on a summer day. But John was strange. She never quite knew what he was thinking, and he sometimes did unexpected things that worried her.

5 Now continue the following text. Use the notes to help you.

Rob could not decide which of the two girls he liked best . . .

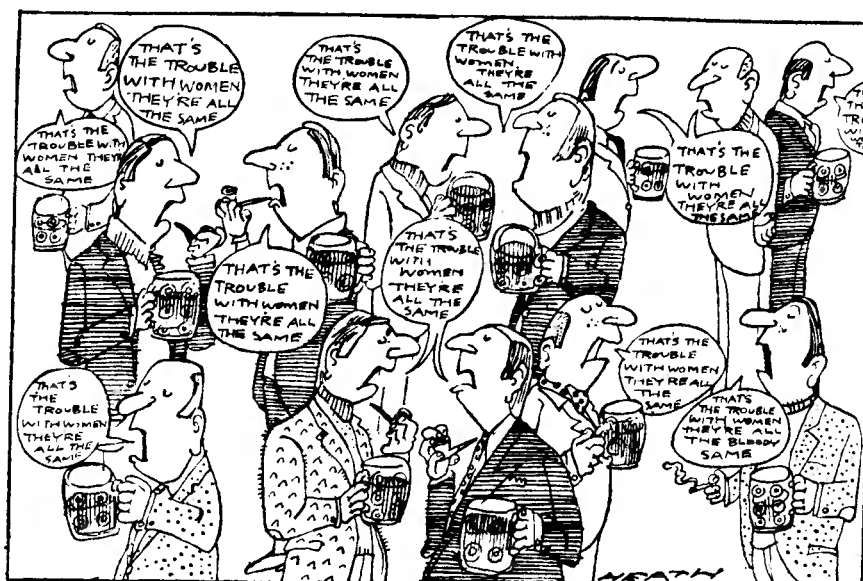
NOTES

Helen: similar to him; same interests; nice personality; old friend of his; older than him; sensible; pretty; in love with him.

Susan: very different from him; an unusual person; strange, fascinating personality; very intelligent; much younger than him; not so pretty as Helen; very beautiful eyes; probably not in love with him.

6 Write a few sentences about one of the following subjects.

- Compare yourself and a person you know well.
- What are the differences between people in the north and the south (or the east and the west) of your country?
- Compare people from your country with the British or the Americans.



10 Things are different

1 Write your own ends for these sentences, using *as* or *than* correctly.

1. Maths is less interesting . . .
2. Maths is more interesting . . .
3. English is not as easy . . .
4. English is more useful . . .
5. A bicycle is less expensive . . .
6. A bicycle is not as fast . . .
7. A bicycle is more expensive . . .
8. I'm happier/older/taller . . .
9. I'm not as happy/old/tall . . .
10. This country is not as . . .
11. This country is less . . .
12. This country is . . .er/more . . .
13. My friend . . . is less . . .
14. The teacher is . . .

2 Write two sentences to compare each of the following.

a mouse and a cat

A mouse is smaller than a cat.

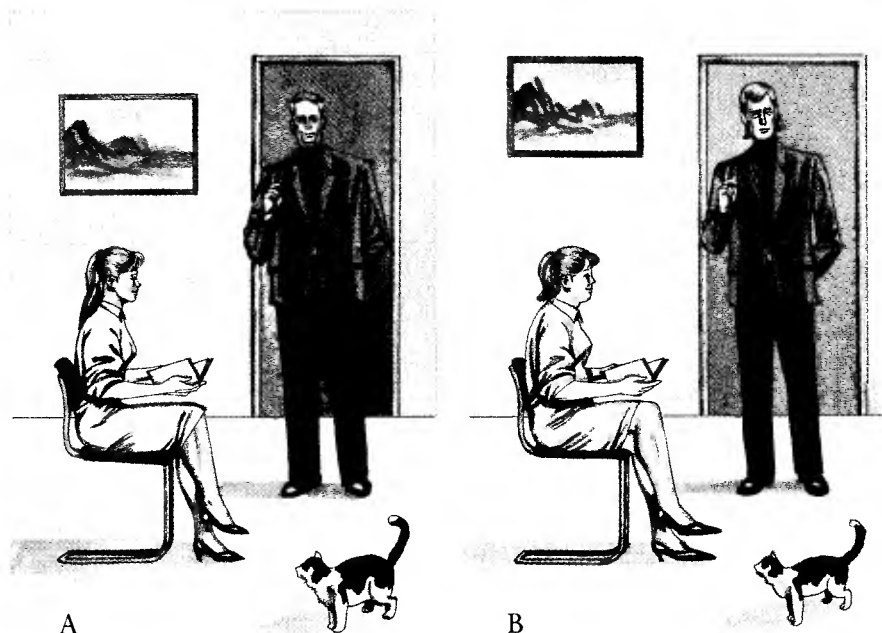
A cat can run faster than a mouse.

1. Britain and your country
2. the United States and the USSR
3. a car and a bicycle
4. men and women
5. yourself and another person



"There goes a car with exactly the same number as ours."

3 Look at the two pictures. They are not quite the same. For example, in picture B the man's hair is longer. Can you find ten more differences?



4 Choose the correct words to fill in the gaps in the sentences.

1. Your English is much than mine. (*better/best*)
2. The whisky comes from Scotland. (*better/best*)
3. We've had much rain this year than last year. (*more/most*)
4. The place that gets the rain in the world is a mountain in Hawaii. (*more/most*)
5. In the 'Cheap Round the World Race', the winner is the person who spends the money getting round the world. (*less/least*)
6. I don't know much, but she knows even than I do. (*less/least*)
7. Which month has the days? (*fewer/fewest*)
8. There are Jews in Israel than in New York. (*fewer/fewest*)
9. 'Are you any good at tennis?' 'I'm the tennis-player in the world.' (*worse/worst*)
10. 'How's your headache?' 'It's getting ' (*worse/worst*)
11. 'I'll get you an aspirin. That'll make you feel ' (*better/best*)
12. People say that Rolls-Royce cars are the in the world. (*better/best*)

5 *Strange but true!* Read this with a dictionary.

The population of Mexico City is twice as big as the population of Norway. Tortoises live longer than people; some bacteria live longer than tortoises. Some trees live for over 3,000 years.

In the 18th century a Russian woman had 69 children.

The world record for water-skiing is faster than the world record for downhill skiing.

The Olympic weightlifting champion Paul Anderson lifted 6,270 pounds (2,850 kilos) in 1957, in a 'backlift.' This is as heavy as three football teams plus five more men.

The nucleus of a hydrogen atom, multiplied 100,000 times, would be as big as this dot: ●

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 10, Exercise 1 (only A and B are recorded here). Listen, and write down as much as you can.

11 Stuff for cleaning windows

1 Put in suitable words or expressions.

1. I'd a shampoo for dry, please.
2., medium or small?
3. 'How is that?' '65p.'
4. Can I round?
5. 'Can I help you?' 'I'm served, thank you.'
6. I have aspirins, please?
7. '..... else?' 'No, thank you. That's

2 Match the things and their descriptions.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. shoe polish | A. things for keeping hands warm |
| 2. skis | B. stuff for sticking things |
| 3. gloves | C. a thing for taking pictures |
| 4. glue | D. stuff for cleaning shoes |
| 5. camera | E. a thing for shaving |
| 6. razor | F. things for moving on snow |

3 Write descriptions (like the ones in Exercise 2) of these things.

a knife; soap; toothpaste; shaving-cream; a tin-opener.

Write descriptions of a few more things.

4 Find out the English names of ten things that you have bought recently. Learn them.

5 Read this with a dictionary and then answer the questions.

UP IN SMOKE

HOUSEWIFE Mrs Fay Funnell saved for months to buy a fur coat in the summer sales. Then after queuing for nine days she set fire to the coat, valued at £795 and bought by her in the sale for £79.

Astonished crowds, queuing outside Debenhams in Oxford Street, London, watched as 36-year-old Mrs Funnell burnt the coat.

As every woman's dream disappeared in smoke, she said: 'I am highly delighted. I hate the fur trade because it is cruel to animals. 150 minks have died to make this jacket.'

1. The text talks about Mrs Funnell in four different ways: *Housewife Mrs Fay Funnell*; *she*; *her*; *36-year-old Mrs Funnell*. The text also talks about her coat in four different ways. Can you find them and write them?
2. Do you think Mrs Funnell was right to burn the coat? (Write two or three sentences.)

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 11, Exercise 3. Listen to the sentences and practise the pronunciation.



"Yeah, they're all right, I'll take 'em."

12 I haven't got anything to wear

1 Fill in the blanks. Try to do the exercise *before* you look at the words in the box.

1. 'What's the?' 'I'm not feeling very well.' 'Oh dear. I get you an aspirin?'
2. 'Can you me some money?' 'Yes, all right, I think When can you give it to me?'
3. 'Have you the time?' 'No, sorry, I'm I haven't.'
4. 'Would you like to a party this evening?' 'That's very of you. I'd love' 'All right. Can you to my house about 8 o'clock?'
5. 'Could I one of your dresses?' 'Yes, of course. Do you want a pair of shoes to go with it?' 'Well, if you're sure you don't'
6. 'Excuse me. you tell me the to Times Square?' 'I'm sorry. I'm a here myself.'
7. 'Have you got for a £5 note?' 'Wait a I have a'

afraid	back	borrow	to borrow	change
come	to come	could	got	kind
'll	look	matter	mind	second
so	stranger	to	way	shall

2 Spelling: double letters. Put another letter in the blank if necessary.

posSible	nec..es..ary	let..er	visit...or
spel...ing	big...er	old...er	wait...ing
sit...ing	stop...ed	rub...ish	definit...ely

3 Infinitive with or without *to*?

1. I haven't got anything (*to eat / eat*).
2. Why don't you (*to take / take*) a holiday?
3. I would like (*to go / go*) out tonight.
4. 'That's the doorbell.' 'I'll (*to go / go*).'
5. Can you (*to lend / lend*) me some money?
6. That dress makes her (*to look / look*) funny.
7. I hope (*to see / see*) you again soon.
8. Shall I (*to carry / carry*) that bag for you?
9. What time do you have (*to start / start*) work in the mornings?
10. It's nice (*to see / see*) you again.

4 Fill in the blanks in the text with words from the box.

after	again	ago	because	broken
called	deep	except	hit	hurt
only	so	soon	started	stay
walking	when			

LOST

My sense of direction is not very good, and I easily get¹ One day, about ten years², I was³ in the mountains between France and Italy⁴ the weather began to turn bad. I⁵ to make my way back downhill,⁶ I did not want to be caught in a storm. But after a few hundred metres I realised⁷ I was not sure of the way. The clouds came down lower and lower, it started to rain, and⁸ I was completely lost. I⁹ as loud as I could, but of course there was nobody close enough to hear me. I did not want to¹⁰ on the mountain, but it was impossible to go on,¹¹ I crawled into a hole between two rocks and waited for the storm to go over.¹² two or three hours the rain stopped and the clouds lifted, and I was able to start walking¹³ I was very cold and hungry, and I had nothing to eat¹⁴ a few sweets.

About half an hour later I suddenly recognised my surroundings, and I realised that I was¹⁵ two or three hundred metres above the camp site. However, my troubles were not over. On my way down I slipped and¹⁶ my knee against a rock. There was a¹⁷ cut and it¹⁸ very badly, and as soon as I got back to the camp I went to see a doctor. Fortunately, nothing was¹⁹.

5 Write about a time when you were lost, or write a story about somebody who was lost. Use words and expressions from Exercise 4, and from the text about Juliana Koepke on page 26 of the Student's Book.

6 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 12, Exercise 2 (only part of the conversation is recorded here). Listen to the conversation with the Student's Book closed and write down as much as you can.

Summary B

1 Put in the missing words.

1. She doesn't sing as well me.
2. Your pronunciation is a lot better mine.
3. The meeting is at the same time last week.
4. My sister's personality is very different mine.
5. 'I didn't like the film much.' 'Neither I.'
6. 'Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?' 'I'd love'
7. A good motorbike costs nearly as much a car.
8. 'Did anything interesting happen?' 'I don't think'
9. I need some stuff cleaning silver.
10. 'I haven't got anything to wear.' 'What your blue dress?'
11. Why you borrow something of mine?
12. '..... I iron it for you?' 'Well, thanks very much. If you really don't

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Where's *my/mine* brother gone?
2. You can't take that bike. It's *my/mine*.
3. Ann and Johnny's garden is much nicer than *our/ours*.
4. 'Whose is that coat?' '*Your/Yours*.'
5. They're nice people, but I don't like *their/theirs* friends.
6. Jane lost all *her/hers* baggage when she went to America.
7. If you show me *your/yours* holiday photos, I'll show you *my/mine*.

3 Put in *got* where it is correct.

1. Have you a light?
2. Goodbye. Have a good holiday.
3. I usually have lunch at one o'clock.
4. Excuse me. Have you the time?
5. I've three brothers.
6. Have you a few minutes? I'd like to have a talk with you.
7. 'What's the matter?' 'I've a headache.'
8. My parents have a small farm in Yorkshire.
9. Hello. Nice to see you. Sit down and have a drink.
10. She always has a bath before she goes to bed.

4 Write a short story using at least seven of the words from the box.

Christmas	helicopter
beard	window pram
shoe	police station stuff
recognise	laugh expensive
unusual	mine less

5 Read this with a dictionary.

AFRICA'S PLEA

I am not you –
but you will not
give me a chance,
will not let me be *me*.

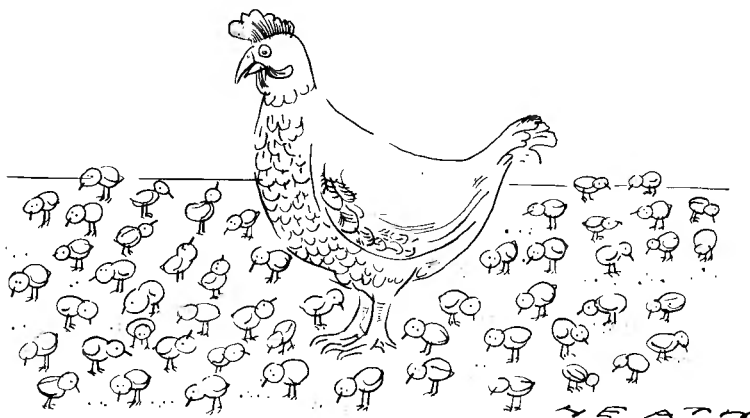
'If I were you –'
but you know
I am not you,
yet you will not
let me be *me*.

You meddle, interfere
in my affairs
as if they were yours
and you were *me*.

You are unfair, unwise,
foolish to think
that I can be you,
talk, act
and think like you.

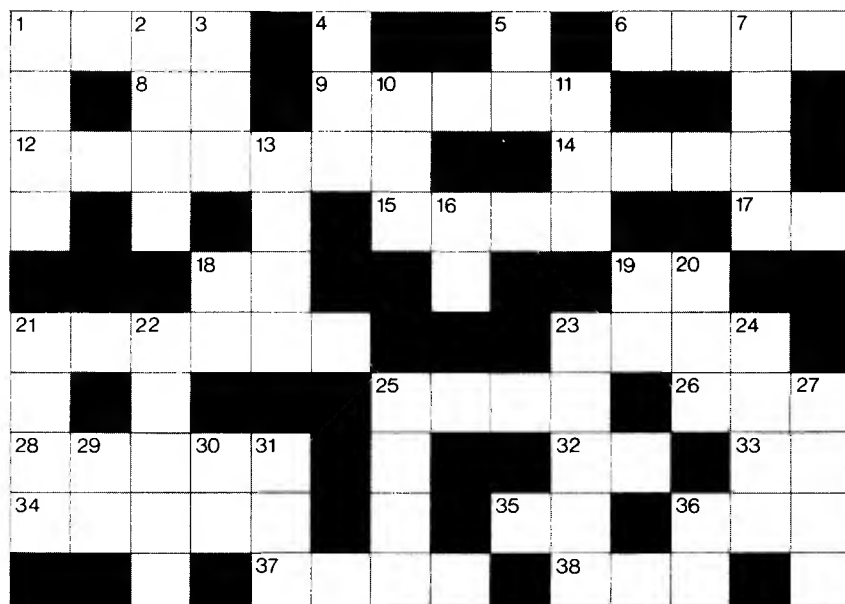
God made *me*.
He made *you*.
For God's sake
let me be *me*.

(Roland Tombekai Dempster)



"But you're special to me, darling."

6 Try the crossword.

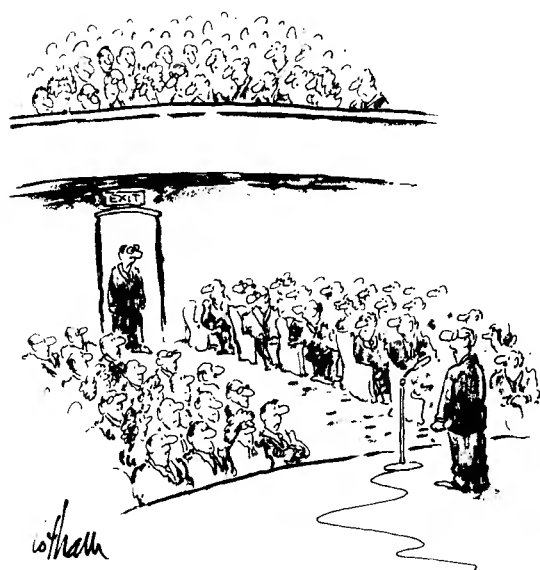


ACROSS

1. The opposite of *more*.
6. Very small person.
8. Hello (*informal*).
9. Have you got some for cleaning windows?
12. 'I don't agree with him.' '..... do I.'
14. The opposite of *under*.
15. What's phone number?
17. 'I like this music.' 'So I.'
18. *I am* in spoken English.
19. She speaks a lot languages.
21. 'What's the?' 'I've got a headache.'
23. It's white and it falls from the sky.
25. Not this.
26. 'What's your favourite colour?' '.....'
28. One more time.
32. His eyes are the same colour mine.
33. Not any.
34. Children make a lot of
35. 'I'm tired.' 'So I.'
36. The past of *eat*.
37. Will not.
38. You can write with it.

DOWN

1. Could you me your raincoat?
2. It travels on the sea.
3. Please come in and down.
4. 'We haven't got any glasses.' 'It doesn't matter. We'll cups.'
5. 'Shall I help you?' '..... you really don't mind.'
7. It can fly.
10. the crossword.
11. I've been here about six weeks.
13. The place where you live.
16. 'Could I borrow your pen?' '..... course.'
18. What time is?
19. 'Where's my glass?' '..... the piano.'
20. The postman has just brought a letter you.
21. 'What does *post-structural*?' 'I have no idea.'
22. It travels on land, on rails.
23. You put this on a letter.
24. The past of *go*.
25. 'How was the party?' 'Not bad. Better usual.'
27. Ann likes opera, and so her boyfriend.
29. The present of *24 down*.
30. 'Jake isn't here yet.' 'Neither Sonia.'
31. Not old.
36. 'What's her job?' 'She's elephant trainer.'



"Come in, Ferguson. We were just talking about you."

Revision B

1 Vocabulary revision. How many words can you add in each group?

Buildings: house, station, . . .

Vehicles: car, . . .

Clothing: jacket, . . .

Parts of the body: arm, . . .

Furniture: table, . . .

Weather: rain, . . .

Food: meat, potato, . . .

Jobs: driver, shop assistant, . . .

2 Grammar revision. Put in *a*, *some* or *one*.

1. 'Would you like cup of tea?' 'Yes, thanks, I'd love,'
2. Could I have shaving-cream, please?
3. 'What colour pen would you like?' '..... red, please.'
4. I need glue and tin of black shoe polish, please.
5. We're looking for fridge.
6. 'Have you got packet of washing powder?' 'I've only got small, I'm afraid.'

3 Stress. Write these words and underline the stressed syllables. Then practise saying them.
Example:

intelligence

above afterwards anyway arrive aspirin
century Chinese Christmas difference
expensive helicopter material recognise
remember something supermarket
together unhappy usual village

4 Translate these into your language.

1. Can you lend me some stamps?
2. Excuse me. Have you got the time?
3. Can I borrow your pen?
4. Sorry, I'm afraid I'm using it.
5. Could you help me for a few minutes?
6. Well, I'm in a bit of a hurry.
7. Have you got a light?
8. Shall I post these letters for you?
9. Could I use your phone?
10. Would you like to play tennis this evening?
11. Could you tell me the way to the station?
12. I'll give you a hand with the cooking, shall I?

5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Revision Lesson B, Listening Exercise 1 (only Marilyn's speech is recorded here). Make sure you know the words in the box; you can use your dictionary. Then listen to the recording and write down everything you hear.

comparison	resemble	angular	temperament
------------	----------	---------	-------------

6 Write a comparison of two people you know well (for instance your mother and father, or two other people in your family, or two friends of yours).



"Have you seen a lady without me?"

13 Have you ever . . . ?

1 Put the correct verb form in each sentence.

1. When I was a child, I cheese. (*never eat*)
2. you ever alone? (*live*)
3. Thousands of women in factories during the Second World War. (*work*)
4. you ever a passport when you were a child? (*have*)
5. Jaime lives in Venezuela; he snow. (*never see*)
6. When your mother was at school, she to wear a uniform? (*have*)
7. I to England in 1980. (*come*)
8. I here ever since. (*live*)
9. What your father you for your last birthday? (*give*)
10. Shakespeare to university. (*never go*)
11. Napoleon to China? (*ever go*)

2 Write ten interesting things that you have done in your life. Useful words: *seen, heard, been to, met, eaten, played.*

3 Write the contractions.

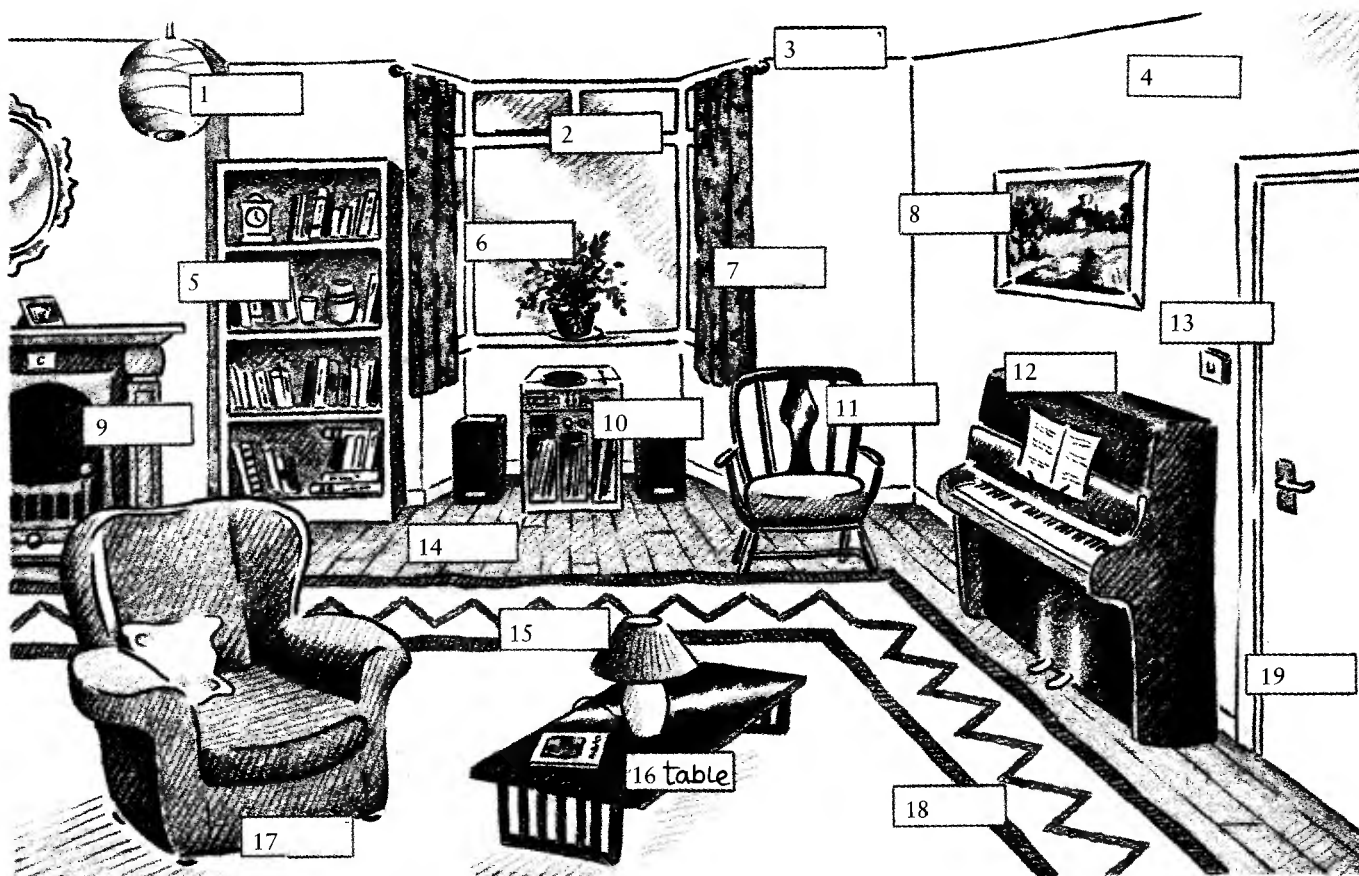
1. *It is* too hot. *It's*...
2. The car *will not* start.
3. *She has* never been to Europe.
4. *She is* nearly eighteen.
5. I think *John is* hungry.
6. *I will* tell you tomorrow.
7. *I would* like a holiday.
8. Pat *has not* telephoned.
9. I *cannot* understand it.

Write the full forms.

1. It *doesn't* matter. *does not*...
2. Alan's six feet tall.
3. *She's* very thirsty.
4. He says *he'll* pay.
5. I *won't* go alone.
6. *She's* never met him.
7. *We'd* like a table for two.

4 Can you fill in the labels with words from the box? Use your dictionary to help you.

armchair	bookcase	carpet	ceiling	chair	curtain
door	fireplace	floor	lamp	light	piano
plant	stereo	switch	table	wall	window



5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 13, Exercise 1 (only answers b and e are recorded here). Listen, and try to write down what you hear.

6 Read one or both of these texts, and do the exercise(s). You can use a dictionary.

A (Dick Francis writes thrillers – novels about crime and violence – that take place in the world of British horse racing.)

Dick Francis can't remember learning to ride: it came to him as naturally as learning to walk. Born in South Wales in 1920, he was a child star at horse shows and after six years' service in the RAF during the Second World War, he made his entry into racing as an amateur rider, becoming a professional National Hunt jockey in 1948. He rode for the Queen Mother and in 1953–4 was Champion Jockey.

Retiring in 1957, Dick Francis became racing correspondent for the Sunday Express and began writing. His first book, published that same year, was his autobiography, *The Sport of Queens*, which has recently been revised and updated. This was followed by a number of thrillers, the material for which he has gleaned principally from the racing world. Forfeit was awarded the Edgar Allan Poe Mystery Prize for the best crime story of 1969 in America. Whip Hand won the 1980 Crime Writers Association Gold Dagger award. Reflex was awarded the Edgar Allan Poe Mystery Prize for 1981.

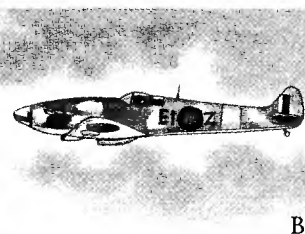
He lives in America with his wife Mary, who helps with the research.

(Blurb from thrillers by Dick Francis)

When you have read the text, put the pictures in the correct order.



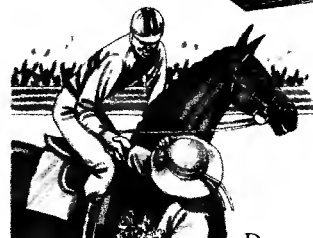
A



B



C



D



E

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

B

Bernard and François Baschet are brothers. They live in Paris and work with new sounds and shapes for making music. They haven't always done this, though; for a long time Bernard managed a factory and François ran a business in Argentina. Then, about 30 years ago, they took their savings and began the work they do now. First they learnt all about how classical musical instruments were made, and then they began inventing their own instruments.

Now their lives are quite varied. They are still inventing new instruments; but Bernard has begun working with children as well. He helps them to discover music without having to read written notes. He sometimes travels, too, giving concerts on his instruments with other musicians. François also travels – sometimes to set up exhibitions, sometimes just for the pleasure of arriving in a new place.

Bernard's main complaint? The telephone. 'When an artist is working,' he says, 'and he has to run to the telephone, something is broken inside. I agree with the sculptor who said that freedom for the artist means having a secretary.'



Which is the most accurate summary of the text?

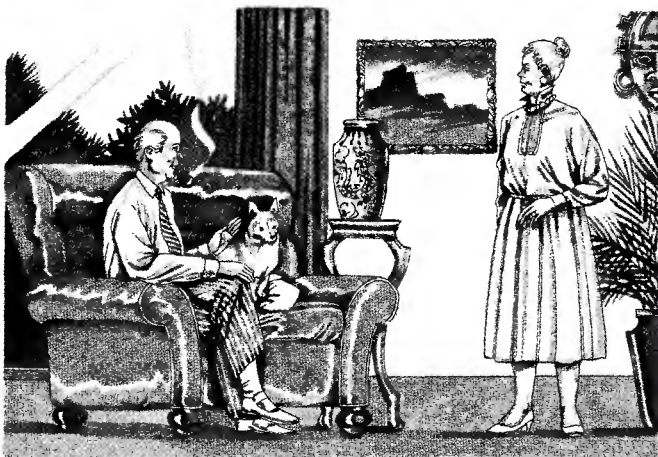
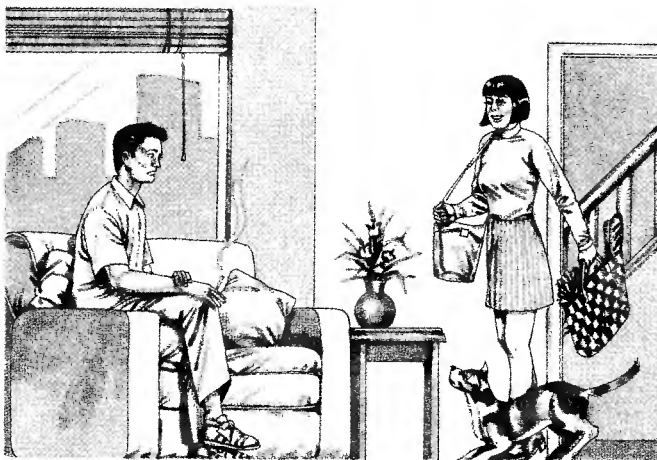
1. Bernard and François Baschet have spent a large part of their lives making new kinds of musical instruments.
2. The Baschet brothers both work at inventing new musical instruments and teaching children to play them.
3. Bernard and François Baschet have recently begun working with new musical instruments: they invent them, teach children to play them, give concerts and set up exhibitions.

14 Things have changed

1 Complete the table of irregular verbs.

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go	went	gone/been
become
break
dream
drink
eat
fall
feel
find
get
hit
learn
lend
lie
meet
ring
rise
spend
take
tell
wear
win

2 Look at the pictures. What has happened to the man and woman since they were young?



3 Put *since* or *for* into the gaps.

- 1968
- twenty years
- Monday
- three days
- two months
- August
- three hours
- ten o'clock
- a long time
- yesterday
- my birthday
- two weeks
- last year
- a few minutes

4 Match the beginnings and ends (you can use a dictionary) and write out the complete descriptions. Example:

A ruin is a building that has fallen down.

A graduate is	somebody who has grown up.
An adult is	somebody who has beaten everybody else at a sport.
A champion is	somebody who has had an accident.
A casualty is	somebody who has finished university.
A ruin is	a child who has lost both parents.
Ice is	water that has covered the land.
A failure is	a building that has fallen down.
A flood is	water that has frozen.
An orphan is	somebody who has not succeeded in life.

5 Look around the room that you are in. Can you write down twenty words for things that you can see? Find out the names of five more things and learn them.

6 Write eight or more sentences about yourself. You can choose some of these ideas, or write about other things.

- Do you feel strongly about any political question?
- Have you ever done something that surprised your family or friends?
- Have you changed very much in the last few years?
- How important is cooking and eating food to you?
- Is there a certain sort of music, or book, or other entertainment, that you like very much?
- Were you happy or unhappy as a child?
- Have your parents been an important influence in your life?
- Have you ever been in love?

15 What do you say when you . . . ?

1 Put in one of the expressions from the box.
(More than one answer may be possible in some sentences, but you must use all the expressions.)

a few	a little	any	enough	how many
how much	no	some	too	too much

- Let's have a rest for minutes.
- Can you turn down the TV? It's loud.
- There isn't soup for four people. I'll have to make more.
- This tea isn't sweet, and there isn't milk.
- I need time to think.
- Could I have just more bread?
- languages can you speak?
- There hasn't been snow this year.
- money do you need?
- Half the people in the world haven't got to eat, and half of the others eat
- There are buses from our village on Sundays.

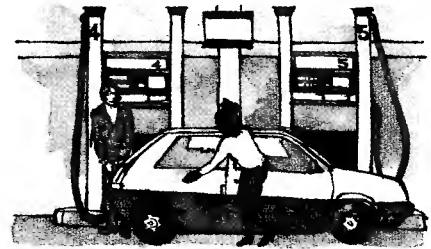
2 Here are typical expressions from four different situations. Can you sort them into four groups?
(There is one expression that doesn't belong.)
Can you think of any more typical expressions for the four situations? And what are the situations?
Begin your answer like this:

Group 1: Situation On the telephone.....
Expressions I'm afraid he's on the.....
other line.....

I'm afraid he's on the other line.
Could I see the wine list?
Take-off is delayed for three hours.
Is that Andrew? This is Paul.
Can I try it on?
Would you like a little more sauce?
Have you got it in a larger size?
Would you ask her to call me back, please?
How much is it?
Which platform for Liverpool?
You can only take one piece of hand baggage.
Could you give him a message?
Is everything all right?
We have to go through a security check.
Could I have the bill, please?
Nothing to declare.
Can I look round?

3 Look at the pictures and write some things that the people could be saying. Example:

1. 'Could you check the tyres?'



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8

4 Write the adverbs. Examples:

cold coldly.....

quiet quietly.....

easy careful happy tired complete
extreme possible soft warm beautiful
probable nice

5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 15, Exercise 4 (only the first five conversations are recorded here). Write down one or more of the conversations.

6 Read this with a dictionary.

RECORDS

When the spacecraft Apollo X was coming back to earth, it reached a speed of 24,791 miles per hour (39,897kph) – the fastest speed at which human beings had ever travelled.

In 1977, a New Zealander ran 5,110 miles (8,224km) in under 107 days.

In 1979, an American ran 50 metres in 18.4 seconds on his hands.

Also in 1979, a New Zealander ran 100 yards (91.7m) backwards in 13.1 seconds.

In 1978, a blind English runner ran 100 metres in 11.4 seconds.

In 1931–2, an American walked backwards from California to Turkey.

In 1984, 16 Japanese cyclists rode one bicycle at the same time.

The 24-hour record for walking backwards is 84 miles (135.18km).

The record for 1 mile (1.6km) on snowshoes is 7 minutes 56 seconds.

A man with one leg jumped 2.04 metres in 1981.

A man swam 1,826 miles (2,938km) down the Mississippi in 1930.

The record for non-stop balancing on one foot is 34 hours. The non-stop crawling record is 28.5 miles (45.87km).

A Russian fell 6,700 metres (21,980ft) from a plane without a parachute in 1942, and lived. A British flier jumped from a burning plane without a parachute in 1944, fell 5,500 metres (18,000ft), landed in a tree and a snowdrift, and was not hurt.

Some more records: dropping eggs without breaking them 650 feet (198m); throwing eggs without breaking them 96.9 metres; non-stop guitar playing 300 hours; non-stop talking 240 hours; making a suit 1 hour 34 minutes 33.42 seconds from sheep to finished suit (Australia 1982).

(Information from *The Guinness Book of Records*)

16 Here is the news

1 Look at the pictures. What has the person been doing in each one?



1 She has been writing letters.



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10

2 Answer these questions with *since* or *for*.
Example:

How long have you been married?

For three months. / Since Christmas.

1. How long have you had the shoes that you are wearing now?
2. How long have you lived at your present address?
3. How long have you been at your present school?
4. How long have you known your English teacher?
5. How long have you been learning English?
6. How long have you had this book?
7. How long have you been doing this exercise?
8. How long have you known your doctor?
9. How long have you had your watch?
10. How long have you known your best friend?

3 Underline the stressed syllables. Examples:

What have you been doing?

How long have you been working here?

1. What have you been talking about?
2. How long have you been learning English?
3. Where have you been staying?
4. Why have you been crying?
5. The President has been visiting America.
6. John and I have been playing with the children.

4 Look out of the window. Can you write down twenty words for things that you can see? Find out the names of five more things and learn them.

5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 16, Exercise 1 (only the second half of the news broadcast is recorded here). Read the following text and listen to the recording. Can you find fourteen differences?

The heavy rain which has been falling steadily for the past two weeks has caused widespread flooding. The River Fant has just burst its banks in West Milltown, and parts of the city centre are under water. The bad weather has ruined many vegetable crops, and food prices in San Fantastico have been going up steadily for the last week. The Minister for Consumer Affairs has just announced that price controls on vegetables and fruit will come into effect tomorrow.

Foreign exchange. The Fantasian grotnik has risen to its highest level against the Outland dollar since last July. The exchange rate is now 1.23 grotniks to the dollar.

The fire which has been burning in Grand South Station for the last five days is now under control. The origin of the fire, which started in the station toilets on Monday, is still unknown. Three more firemen were overcome by smoke during the night, and have been taken to hospital.

And now the weather. Light rain will continue in all parts of Fantasia, . . .

6 Write the text for a short news broadcast, using some of the following sentence-frames. (You can make some changes if you want to.)

The which has beening for
has has just, and

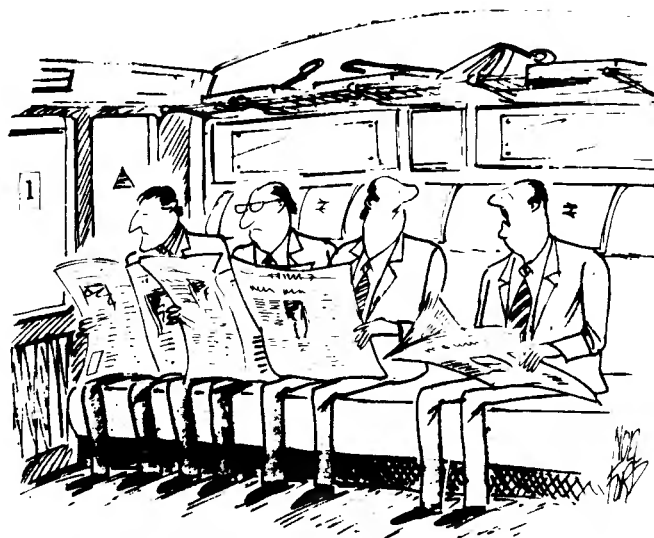
..... has just has,
and

The has since
is now

Three (SIMPLE PAST) yesterday. The
Minister has that

A has beening in since
.....

The Prime Minister / President has just
He/She has beening



*"Fifteen years we've commuted together on this train:
fifteen years all we've ever said to each other has been
'Good Morning' – I'd just like you to know, I love you."*

17 USA holiday

1 Complete these sentences using *may*.

1. If a small child plays with matches, he or she may get burnt.
2. If you don't lock your car when you park it, . . .
3. If you don't put your name on your suitcase when you travel, . . .
4. If you drive after drinking too much alcohol, . . .
5. If you give a coin to a baby, . . .
6. If you smoke in bed, . . .
7. If a child walks around with a pencil in its mouth, . . .

3 Travel verbs. Complete the table.

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|------------|
| 1. travel by air | = | <u>fly</u> |
| 2. travel by car | = | ..... |
| 3. travel on foot | = | ..... |
| 4. travel on horseback | = | ..... |
| 5. travel by bicycle | = | ..... |

2 Put capital letters and punctuation marks where they belong.

one of my friends has just returned from a holiday in the usa he now considers himself an expert on the states it makes me laugh but its not the first time ive seen it people go to america with a firm idea of what theyre going to find there and then they find it they dont meet many americans because they never leave their own little group they go to the tourist traps disneyland and miami beach for example and follow their tour guides around like sheep they are shown exactly what they want to see and so they think that america really is exactly like its cinema image

i think the only way to get to know a country is to go there alone or in a very small group and stay in a place where there are not very many tourists then you have a chance of meeting people and finding out what their life is really like of course it is important to try and learn at least a little bit of the language before you go you wont come back an expert but you will know more than my friend knows about america

4 In English, most two-syllable words are stressed on the first syllable, like this:

☐☐ rather ☐☐ difference ☐☐ Europe

Can you find five words in this list that are stressed on the second syllable?

awful Britain depend dirty enjoy except
language listen living noisy people ready
sincere throughout very

5 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Lesson 17, Exercise 4 (only the third speaker is recorded here). Try to write down everything you hear.

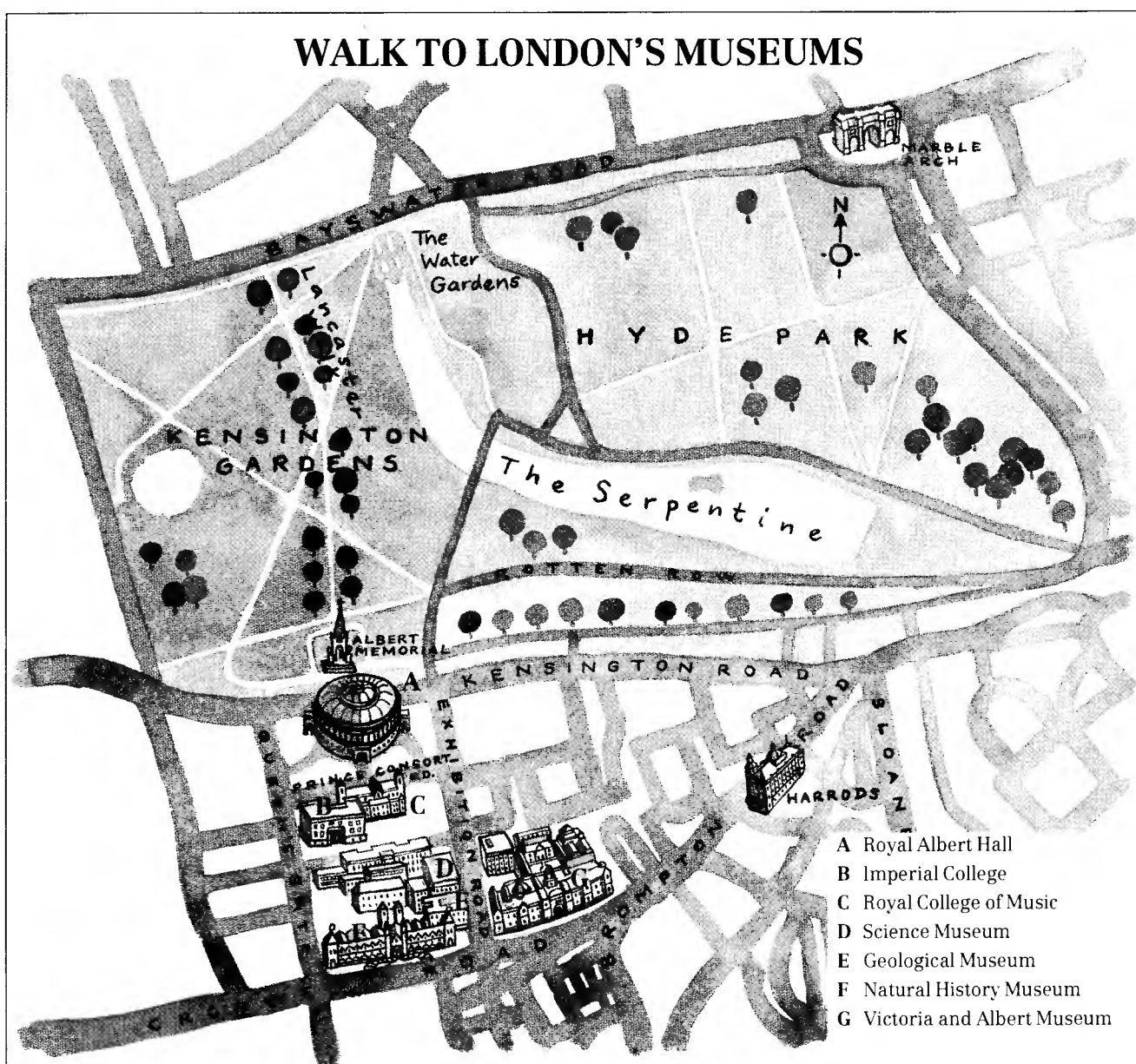


"She said will passengers for somewhere
I didn't catch go to gate number
something or other."



"Pardon me, we're from New Orleans -
would you call this foggy?"

6 Read the directions and draw the route on the map.



This walk starts at busy Marble Arch. Go west along the side of Hyde Park, parallel with Bayswater Road, as far as the pleasant water-gardens at the north end of the Serpentine. Walk south across the gardens, then continue down a tree-lined avenue (you are now in Kensington Gardens) to the elaborate Albert Memorial, built between 1864 and 1876 as a monument to Queen Victoria's beloved Prince Consort. The huge brick-coloured building across the road is the Royal Albert Hall, used broadly (and at different times) for events as different as classical music concerts and wrestling matches. Cross Kensington Road to Queen's Gate, and then turn left into Prince Consort Road. Here you see the back of the Albert Hall and part of Imperial College and the Royal College of Music. Turn right into Exhibition Road. Two hundred yards along

you will reach the Science Museum, one of the great museums which owe their existence to the profits of the Great Exhibition of 1851. Beyond the Science Museum, which is especially recommended for children who are interested in seeing how things work, are the Natural History Museum and the Geological Museum. Across Exhibition Road is the most famous of the four, the Victoria and Albert Museum.

Walking time to the museums is about an hour.

At least two hours should be allowed for each of the museums you want to visit. Those not wanting to see the museums can walk along Brompton Road into the smart shopping area of Knightsbridge (Harrods is there). Museum-goers will do better to take a bus when they emerge into the daylight.

18 Knife-thrower's assistant wanted

1 Put in the missing words.

1. Ask him to phone me as soon possible, please.
2. She earns \$50,000 year.
3. I look forward hearing you.
4. 'How often do you go to America?' '..... three months.'
5. I used to very shy, but now I'm OK.
6. Would you like little more soup?
7. Fill up four-star, please.
8. I'd like a single room two nights.
9. The toilets are the first door the left.
10. That's very kind you.
11. 'Thanks very much.' 'Not all.'
12. She's not old enough drive.

2 Choose the correct tense (Present or Present Perfect).

1. We *know* / *have known* each other for three years.
2. How long *do you live* / *have you lived* here?
3. I'm *seeing* Jake / I've *seen* Jake at six o'clock.
4. She *has* / *has had* that job since 1985.
5. Sorry, the train was late. How long *are you waiting* / *have you been waiting*?
6. He *is starting* / *has started* work on Tuesday.

3 Join beginnings and ends with *must* to make six or more sentences.

Example:

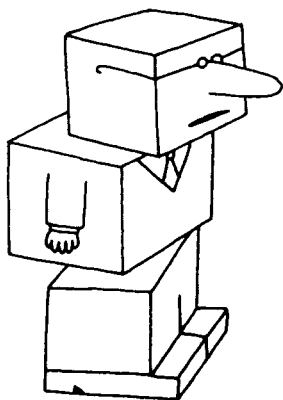
A teacher must know how to make lessons interesting.

BEGINNINGS

A teacher
A driver
A gardener
A businessman
A photographer
A secretary
An engineer
A vet
A doctor
A salesperson
A writer
An actor or actress
A shop assistant
A primary-school teacher

ENDS

like animals
be interested in money
know how to make lessons interesting
know how to change his or her voice
be able to type
be good at mathematics
like selling
like children
like working alone
like working with people
have a camera
have a good sense of direction
want to help people
like working outside



C. Parrott

"We're offering you the job on probation, Whitlock. You have three months to become one of us."



Schwartz

"I'm leaving you, Nora. The company has transferred me to another wife."

4 How many sentences can you write with words from the box?
Each sentence must have two of the words in. You can make small changes to the words. Example:

I ate a lot of potatoes because I was hungry.

average	beautiful	believe	bird	boring	cheap	clothes
dangerous	down	dream	everybody	fourth	gun	
happy	hot	hungry	message	piano	picture	post
potato	problem	square	strange	sugar		

5 Underline the stressed syllables. Example:

experience

assistant company education interview advertise unable essential
excellent necessary between several possible forward

6 Read the advertisements with a dictionary. Then write a letter of application for one of the jobs.

ADVERTISEMENTS

ROSTON TIMES

MANAGER

FOR SMALL NEWSAGENTS
Applicants must have experience of running a small shop.
Good knowledge of accounting desirable.
Aged 25-40.
Apply in writing to:
Personnel Manager
Chambers and Wren
Chambers House
High Street
Barbury BA6 10S.

FULL-TIME GARDENER

wanted for Roston General Hospital.
Experience essential.
Good wages and conditions.
Apply: The Administrator.

**Efficient
SHORTHAND TYPIST/
SECRETARY**

needed for small friendly company.
Apply to Office Manageress,
Ann Harper Ltd,
6 Newport Road,
Roston RS1 4JX.

CLEANER

required for our Roston office,
hours by arrangement.
Apply The Manager
Coleman and Stokes
33 South Parade
Roston RS1 5BQ.

RECEPTIONIST

for young, grow relations co specializing in local sm.
Apply to The Ro.



Yours faithfully



Yours sincerely

Summary C

1 Look at the pictures. What has the person been doing in each one?

She has been riding...



2 Put in *my, mine, your, yours, his, her, hers, our, ours, their* or *theirs*.

- 'Excuse me, that's coat.' 'Oh, is it? I'm sorry. I thought it was
- We've got the same kind of house as Mr and Mrs Robson, but is a bit bigger than ours.
- Could we have bill, please?
- 'Is that Jane's cat?' 'No, this one's white. is black.'
- 'Have you seen new motorbike?' 'Oh, it isn't He just borrowed it.'
- 'When's birthday?' 'December 15th.' 'Really? Mine's the day before
- Mary and boyfriend are taking holiday in June – the same time as we're taking Why don't we all go together?

3 Which one is different? Why? Example:

car taxi pram bicycle
Bicycle – the others have four wheels.
 OR *Taxi – you don't pay to use the others.*
 OR *Pram – the only one that you push.*

- coach car bicycle bus
- train bicycle car motorbike
- train car plane bus
- walk ride hitchhike cycle
- New York Las Vegas Tokyo Hawaii
- river town city village
- river swimming-pool sea lake
- butcher's chemist's library bookshop

4 Write these words and underline the main stress. Then check in a dictionary and practise saying the words. Example:

advertise

agriculture apply assistant average avoid
 become colony company continue
 economy education election essential
 excellent experience faithfully family
 government hospital improve interview
 necessary percentage population
 qualification salary sincerely traffic
 unemployment vegetable

5 Translate these into your language.

- 'Have you ever been to Glasgow?' 'No, I never have.'
- During the last three years, I have travelled about 100,000km.
- How long have you known her?
- The President and his wife have just arrived in Canada for a three-day visit.
- What have you been doing this week?
- I used to be very shy, but now I'm OK.
- I'm afraid you've got the wrong number.
- First on the right, second on the left.
- Is service included?
- 'That's very kind of you.' 'Not at all.'

6 Read this with a dictionary.

THE WORLD'S WORST DRIVER

The world record for the most traffic offences in the shortest period of time is held by a man from Frisco, in Texas, who achieved this feat in the first twenty minutes of car ownership.

Having hitch-hiked to the nearby city of McKinney on 15 October 1966, he bought a 1963 Ford and drove out of the used car showroom at 3.50pm.

At 3.54 he collided with a 1952 Chevrolet driven by a local woman, Mrs Wilma Smith Bailey, at the corner of McKinney and Heard Street.

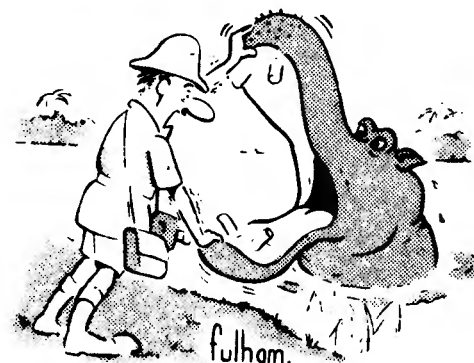
One minute later he collided again 90 feet south of Virginia Street and Tennessee Street with another Chevrolet, driven by Miss Sally Whitsel of Farmersville.

Feeling more confident now in his new vehicle, he next drove round the courthouse one-way system in the wrong direction. Forty-six feet later he hit a 1963 Ford. It was still only 3.58.

He continued in this vein until 4.15pm, when he was in deep conversation with Patrolman Richard Buchanan, having just hit a Ford Mustang in Louisiana Street.

In the space of just 20 minutes he had acquired 10 traffic tickets, caused six accidents, hit four cars without stopping and driven on the wrong side of the road four times.

When questioned, this determined motorist, who had not driven for 10 years, said: "They don't drive like they used to".



"Gloria, the travellers cheques!
Throw out the travellers cheques!"

(From *The Return of Heroic Failures* by Stephen Pile)

Revision C

1 Match the countries and capitals. Use an atlas if necessary. Learn any of the English names that you don't know. Example:

Argentina – Buenos Aires

COUNTRIES

Argentina	Czechoslovakia	Denmark
Egypt	Germany	Greece
India	Indonesia	Iran
Japan	The Netherlands	Ireland
People's Republic of China	Poland	Nigeria
Switzerland	Taiwan	Portugal
The USSR	Thailand	Turkey
Yugoslavia	Zaire	

CAPITALS

Amsterdam	Athens	Bangkok	Beijing
Belgrade	Berne	Buenos Aires	
Cairo	Copenhagen	Delhi	Djakarta
Dublin	Berlin	Ankara	
Kinshasa	Lagos	Lisbon	Moscow
Prague	Taipei	Tehran	Tokyo
			Warsaw

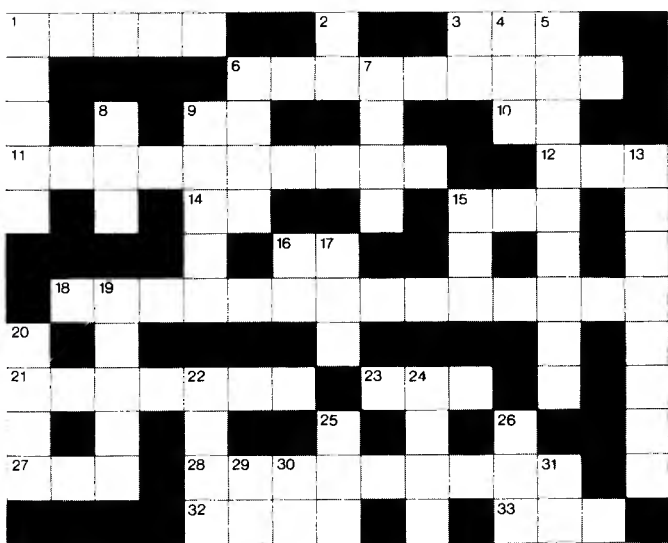
2 Put in *can, cannot, may, may not, will, will not or must*.

- Most birds fly.
- Most animals fly.
- We be a bit late this evening – I'm not sure.
- If you go to Scotland for a holiday, you probably spend all your time sunbathing.
- Secretary wanted – speak good English.
- If you speak your own language in England, most people understand you.
- If you speak English in Canada, most people understand you.
- We don't know if we can go on holiday this year. We have enough money.
- I don't know if I help you.
- A professional pianist practise for several hours every day.

3 Complete the table of irregular verbs.

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bring	.....	.....
.....	bought	.....
.....	.....	chosen
come	.....	.....
.....	flew	.....
.....	.....	forgotten
hold	.....	.....
.....	left	.....
.....	.....	lost
mean	.....	.....
.....	ran	.....
.....	.....	sold
sing	.....	.....
.....	swam	.....
.....	.....	woken

6 Try the crossword.



ACROSS

1. The opposite of *long*.
3. Fifty-two weeks = year.
6. Yours
9. My parents were both born in March, and was I.
10. You and I.
11. Yours
12. You can drink out of it.
14. She lives 37 Cumberland Street.
15. You can do this with a knife.
16. I don't know where my coat
18. If you want a good job you may need these.
21. If you want to drive, you must have a driving
23. Not young; not new.
27. This is useful for seeing.
28. You can get this at school.
32. Past participle of *do*.
33. Excuse me, have you a pen that I can borrow?

4 If you have Student's Cassette A, find Revision Lesson C, Grammar Exercise 1. Listen to the song again and try to write the first two verses. Check in your Student's Book to see how much you have understood correctly.

5 Write the text for a short news broadcast. All the news must be good. Some things that you could put in: a demonstration; a visit by an important person; a birth; a marriage; a sports report; a weather report.

DOWN

1. The people who work in a place.
2. 'Where's Rosie?' '..... bed.'
3. Fred doesn't smoke drink.
4. Not old.
5. We have these every five years, to choose Members of Parliament.
6. The opposite of *hard*.
7. Not hot; not warm.
8. 'Fill up with unleaded, please.' 'Right. And shall I check the?'
9. '..... I iron your dress for you?' 'If you really don't mind.'
13. I'll come back as soon as
15. Animal that drinks milk, catches mice and doesn't like dogs.
16. you go on holiday to Texas, you won't do much skiing.
17. Half past is halfway between a quarter past five and a quarter to eight.
19. Your mother's son's mother's husband's daughter's father's brother is your
20. The sky may be this colour.
22. To get a really good job, you probably both qualifications and experience.
24. Sorry I'm Have you been waiting long?
25. Very hard cold water.
26. Animal that doesn't like *15 down*.
29. What time the first buses run in the morning?
30. The opposite of *happy* is*happy*.
31. Not any.

19 Their children will have blue eyes

1 Match the beginnings and ends of the sentences.

If you are travelling at 80kph in a car,
If the score in your game is 40-15,
If today is your golden wedding anniversary,
If your great-grandparents all had blue eyes,
If you travel from England to Scotland,
If last year was a leap year (with 366 days),
If you can speak French,
If you can see pink elephants,

next year won't be a leap year.
you have been married for 50 years.
you can understand at least a bit of Italian.
perhaps you need to see a doctor.
you have blue eyes.
you can stop safely in 52m.
you do not go through customs and immigration.
you are probably playing tennis.

2 Where will you be this time tomorrow? This time next week? A month from now? This time next year? Write sentences.

This time tomorrow I will be . . .

This time next . . .

A month . . .

This . . .

3 Write sentences with *will certainly*, *will probably*, *may*, *will probably not* or *will certainly not*. Example:

Will you be in the same house this time next year?

I will probably not be in the same house
this time next year.

1. Will you live to be 100 years old?
2. Will next year be better for you than this year?
3. Will it rain this evening?
4. Will you do all the exercises in this book?
5. Will you sleep well tonight?
6. Will you get a lot of presents on your birthday?
7. Will you climb a mountain during the next twelve months?
8. Will doctors discover a cure for cancer before the year 2000?
9. Will there be a world war in the next ten years? (Start *There will/may . . .*)
10. Will you be able to speak perfect English one day?
11. Will you be able to dance when you are 90?
12. Will you have to get up early tomorrow?
13. Will you have to work next weekend?

4 Do you know the names of all these containers? Write them down, using a dictionary if necessary. Learn the ones you didn't know.



5 Here are some sentences about things that may happen in the future. Read the sentences with a dictionary, and decide which developments will do most good to the world. Write down the letters of the sentences in order of importance.

- A. If people take a special drug, they will be able to eat as much as they like without getting fat.
- B. There will be a vaccine which will stop teeth going bad – people will never have toothache.
- C. There will be drugs which will stop us feeling pain, but will not make us unconscious.
- D. People will be able to live 20–40 years longer than now.
- E. Women will be able to have children at the age of 60.
- F. We may be able to partly control the weather.
- G. Trains will be able to travel at 2,000 kph in special vacuum tunnels.
- H. Translating machines will be so good that nobody will have to learn foreign languages.

Order of importance: 1. 2. 3.
4. 5. 6. 7. 8.

6 Read these with a dictionary.

'When I was a kid, I had no watch. I used to tell the time by my violin. I used to practise in the middle of the night and the neighbours would yell "Fine time to practise the violin, three o'clock in the morning!"'

(Henny Youngman)

'Insanity is hereditary, you can get it from your children.'

(Sam Levenson)

'Anybody who hates children and dogs can't be all bad.'

(W. C. Fields)

'I think my husband has been unfaithful to me. My last child didn't look like him at all.'

(Ann Smith)

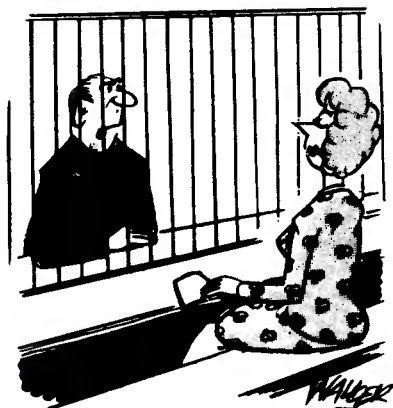
'Father heard his children scream,
So he threw them in the stream,
Saying as he drowned the third,
"Children should be seen, *not* heard!"'

(Harry Graham)

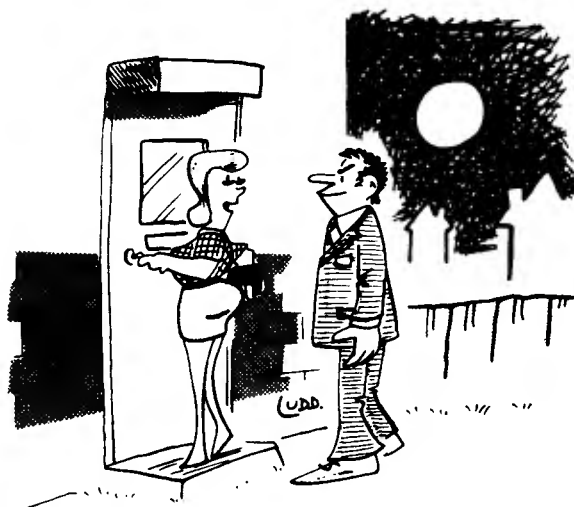
'We're paid to get on with the children.
They aren't paid to get on with us.'

(Teacher at the Dragon School, Oxford)

A woman wrote to the famous dramatist George Bernard Shaw, saying 'You have the greatest brain in the world and I have the most beautiful body; so we ought to produce the most perfect child'. Shaw replied 'Yes, but if it was born with my beauty and your brains?'



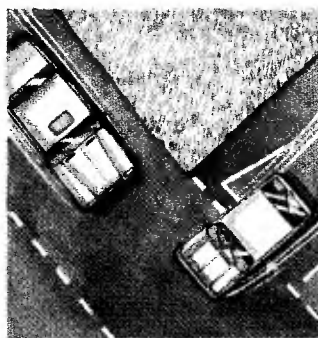
"You'll wait for me and try to be faithful?
Dammit – I'm only in for 30 days."



"You'll like Mum and Dad – they're out!"

20 A matter of life and death

1 Look at the pictures and say what is going to happen.



1



2



3



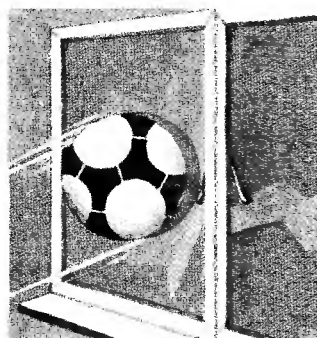
4



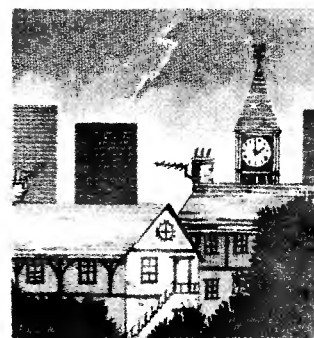
5



6



7



8

2 Report the sentences, beginning *She said . . .*
Examples:

'I'll be at home tomorrow.'
She said (that) she would be at home tomorrow.

'You'll be late.'
She said (that) I would be late.

'Mary's going to have a baby.'
She said (that) Mary was going to have a baby.

1. It will probably rain.
2. I'm going to see Anna.
3. It's late.
4. Jack's going to change his job.
5. I won't be at school on Friday.
6. There will be a meeting next Tuesday.
7. Alice and Rita are going to buy a car.
8. I'll always love you.
9. You'll forget me.
10. Prices are going to go up next week.

3 Spelling revision. Write the contractions.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. I am I'm | 3. there is | 7. I will |
| you are | there is not | you will |
| he is | 4. do not | he will |
| she is | does not | it will |
| it is | 5. did not | we will |
| we are | 6. have not | John will |
| they are | has not | 8. cannot |
| 2. I am not | | 9. I would |
| you are not | | 10. should not |
| she is not | | |

4 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 20, Exercise 5 (only the first speaker is recorded here). List the numbers 1 to 20 on a piece of paper; listen to the recording and write the words that are missing from the text.

Well, we've decided that we're going to1..... ten kilograms2..... And we're going to3..... two blankets, one kilogram of dried4....., two backpacks and the5..... Erm, we're going to6..... sic -, we're going to take six7..... of8..... 9..... Erm, we're going to take the10..... We're going to take the11..... We're going to take12..... in case of erm,13..... We're going to take the14..... 15..... 16..... We're going to take two17..... of18..... We're going to take a19..... and we're going to take two signal flares20.....

5 We asked two soldiers who are trained in survival to do Exercise 3 in the Student's Book. Read their solution and the reasons for it. You can use a dictionary.

I think it is going to take us about five days to get to the nearest village. If both of us are fit, the woman can carry 15kg and the man can carry 20kg – don't forget that the packs are going to be lighter every day as we eat and drink. We are going to travel at night in the desert (using blankets for warmth) and sleep in turns during the day (under a blanket 'tent'). In the mountains we are going to travel during the day and sleep at night. Before we begin walking on the first day we are going to eat, and have a good drink of water.

Some things we are **not** going to take are:

- tent: too heavy, and we can use the blankets for a tent
- cooking equipment: we can cook and eat food from the tins
- radio receiver: we can't transmit
- rifle: we don't want to frighten people who see us
- tin opener: there's one on the knife

Here's what we're going to take:

- 2 backpacks
- rope (to make tent, to climb in mountains)
- 4 blankets (to make tent in the desert, for warmth when it's cold)
- 5 signal flares
- 12.5 litres of water
- torch and batteries
- 9kg of tinned food (to eat, possibly without cooking, from the tin)
- first aid kit (taking contents out of box)
- 0.2kg of newspapers (for 'floor' of tent)
- map
- compass
- sun cream
- 1kg of dried fruit (to eat in small portions for quick energy)
- knife
- sunglasses
- matches

6 Look again at Student's Book Exercise 3. Now write a similar problem yourself. It can be about somebody who is in trouble in the Arctic, or on the moon, or on a small island, or somewhere else – you decide.

21 If you see a black cat, . . .

1 Grammar revision. Complete the table of irregular verbs.

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break	.....	.....
.....	burnt	.....
.....	.....	drawn
fall	.....	.....
.....	got	.....
.....	.....	hit
hurt	.....	.....
.....	meant	.....
see	.....	.....
.....	shut	.....
.....	.....	stolen
throw	.....	.....
.....	won	.....

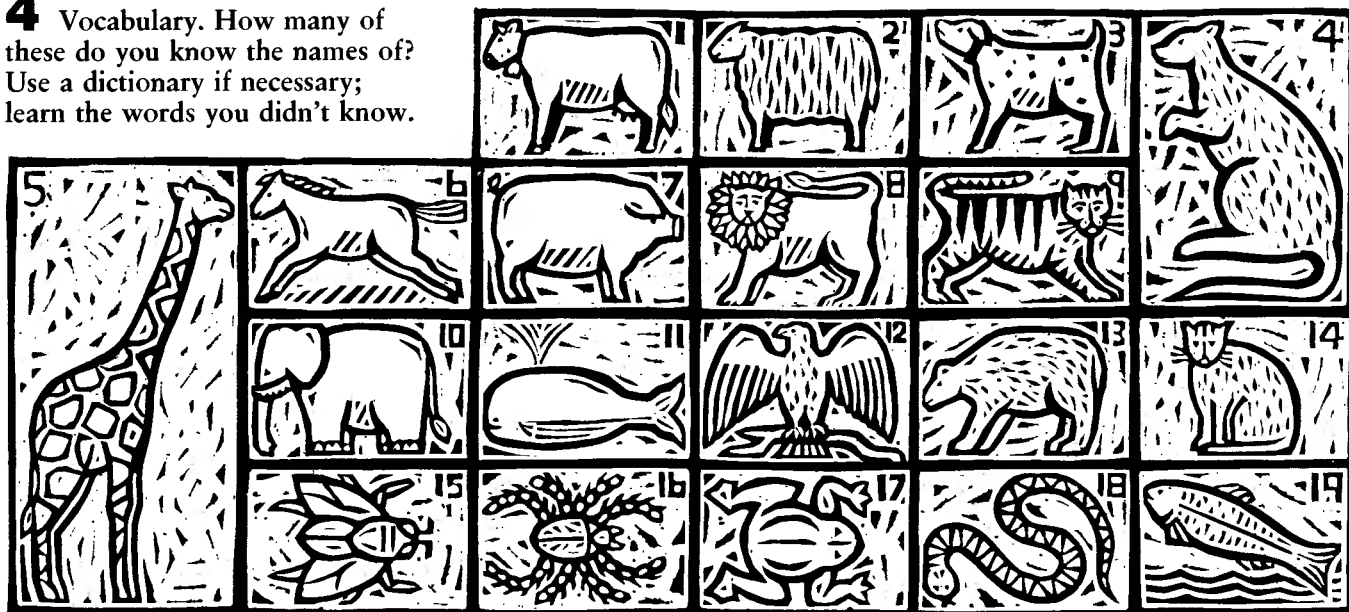
2 *If or when?*

1. I get enough money, I'll buy myself a new car.
2. The house is so big – it's a bit frightening at night it's dark.
3. I suppose I'll have more time to myself the children get older.
4. it rains this afternoon, we won't have to water the flowers this evening.
5. a stranger offers you a ride home from school in his car, just say 'No, thank you' and walk straight on.
6. My mother is going to move to the country she retires.
7. I live to be 100, I'd like to have an enormous party.
8. You'll feel much better tomorrow you go to bed early tonight.
9. you go to bed tonight, could you leave the kitchen light on?
10. I don't think life will be worth living there is a third world war.
11. We'll have an easier time with money after November, we finish paying for the car.
12. Monica usually brings her cat she comes to visit us.

3 Put in the correct verb tenses.

- I will come and see you tomorrow if I have time. (*come; have*)
- I you when I (*phone; arrive*)
- If it a warm night, we the party in the garden. (*be; have*)
- Do you think you a job when you school? (*find; leave*)
- If you hungry, tell me and I you something to eat. (*be; get*)
- If you me the keys, I your car round to the front door. (*give; bring*)
- When I time, I myself some new clothes. (*have; buy*)
- If it at the weekend, we at home. (*rain; stay*)
- If Mother on Sunday, I a lemon meringue pie. (*come; make*)
- When I work, I round the world. (*stop; travel*)

4 Vocabulary. How many of these do you know the names of? Use a dictionary if necessary; learn the words you didn't know.



5 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 21, Exercise 5. Listen to the recording and decide whether the following sentences are true or false.

- John orders four bottles of champagne.
- Olga wants to go to the zoo.
- Olga has a green bag.
- John finds Olga's address in her bag.
- John doesn't go to the police.
- John gets back to the office at five o'clock.
- John takes £10,000 from the office safe.
- At the airport, John sees Olga again.



"All creatures great and small: this is the Lord speaking! I want you all to get to bed early tonight. You're going to have a big day tomorrow!"

6 Reading skills. Read the text; don't use a dictionary. Then find the words *great*, *count*, *about*, *odd*, *custom*, *anxious* in the text. Each of these words can have several different meanings. Read the explanations and choose the meanings that the words have in the text.

- great* 1. very important
2. very big
3. well known
4. good and enjoyable
- count* 1. If you count you are important.
2. find out how many there are
3. a kind of lord
- about* 1. If you're about to do something, you're going to do it soon.
2. not exactly
3. on the subject of
4. round in a circle
- odd* 1. Odd numbers are 1, 3, 5, 7 etc.
2. strange
3. not happening very often
- custom* 1. thing that people like to do at certain times or in certain situations
2. If you go to a foreign country, you may have to open your luggage at the customs.
3. the people who use a shop
- anxious* 1. afraid, nervous about something
2. not calm or relaxed
3. If you are anxious to do something, you want to do it.

LOVE IS AN INSIDE-OUT NIGHTIE

Girls! Here's a great way to find out the name of your future husband.

According to an old superstition, you will dream of your husband-to-be if you –

Wear your nightie inside out.

OR sleep with a mirror under your pillow.

OR count nine stars each night, for nine nights.

OR rub your bedposts with a lemon.

OR eat 100 chicken gizzards.

OR fill your mouth with water and run three times round the houses.

The first man you see as you run will have the same name as your future spouse.

If you don't believe me, ask researcher Alvin Schwartz.

He's about to publish a book called *Cross Your Fingers, Spit In Your Hat* – a collection of the superstitions and odd customs people use to help them through life.

And he has found that we're just as anxious to court Lady Luck as any other generation.

We don't just believe old wives' tales – we're busy making up new ones.

Mr Schwartz says: 'We rely on superstitions for the same reasons people always have.'

When we are faced with situations we cannot control – which depend on luck or chance – superstitions make us feel more secure.'

(John Hill, *Sun*)

nightie: night-dress
gizzard: part of a bird's digestive system
spouse: marriage partner

superstition: belief in luck, magic, etc.
court: try to get the favour of
old wives' tales: superstitions

22 We don't get on well

1 Put the words in the right order. **2** Use one or more words from the lesson in each blank.

- for to work easy she's
- very talk he's to to difficult
- work he's with nice to
- with live to easy she's
- music pleasant listen this is to to
- with get to on easy she's
- pleasure it's work a her with to

- My ex-girlfriend and I used to have a lot of rows; but when my new girlfriend and I have a, we talk about it.
- I am very patient with young children, but I often angry with adults.
- My brother Phil is very easy to.
- I was sorry that your mother was ill.
- Before I came to England, I didn't how different it was from other European countries.
- Keith's his mind: he's not going to America for his holiday, he's going to Greece instead.
- I was that house prices were going down.
- Marilyn angry for silly reasons sometimes.
- She's a lovely person; it's to work with her.
- I like American food, but I can't American beer.

3 What did they say?

SUE: I like working with Paula.

She said (that) she liked working with Paula.

DAVE: She isn't always easy to get on with.

He said (that) she wasn't always easy to get on with.

SUE: She's very fair.

DAVE: She doesn't like to hear about her mistakes.

SUE: She tells interesting stories.

DAVE: She doesn't always tell true stories.

SUE: She listens very well.

DAVE: She tells everyone else everything she hears.

SUE: Dave, you're not being fair.

DAVE: I don't like people who are cleverer than me.

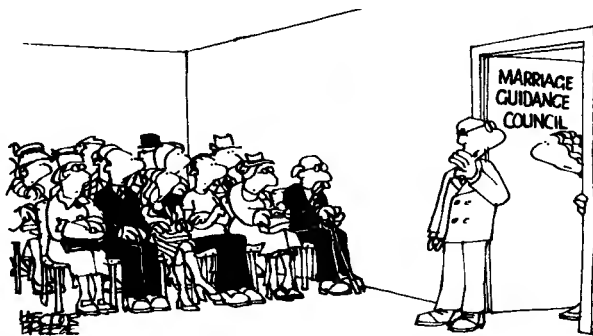
4 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 22, Exercise 6. Listen and repeat, trying for good intonation.

5 Write about somebody you know well; use a lot of words and expressions from the lesson. OR: Imagine you live with a famous person. Write about how you get on with the person.

6 Put the past tense form of one of these verbs in each blank. Sometimes more than one answer may be correct.

hear	come	put	know	lose	tell
say	see	begin	make	go	can
wake up					have

1. When I yesterday it was raining.
2. I Janet at the disco last night.
3. John Prince when he was a boy.
4. I the same voice teacher as Pavarotti.
5. He his jacket on the bed, I think.
6. He he a headache, but I think he just didn't want to come.
7. How many people to the meeting last night?
8. When she was younger she run much faster than that.
9. They to Bali for two weeks in September.
10. Who you they were here?
11. I some people in the street at midnight last night.
12. I studying English when I was twelve.
13. I a terrible mistake yesterday.
14. Karen her glasses when she was in Spain.



"This could be difficult. They say they're all together."

23 If I were you, . . .

1 Complete the dialogue with the past or conditional (with would) of the verbs in the box. You should use some verbs more than once.

A: I can't think what to do. If John 1 here, he 2 what to do.

B: If I 3 you, I 4 the instruction book.

A: I've read it twice already, but I can't understand anything. Do you think it 5 a good idea if I 6 the top off and 7 inside?

B: I don't know. I don't think I 8 that if it 9 mine.

A: Well, what 10 you 11 if you 12 a problem like this?

B: I 13 John.

A: Well, that 14 easier if I 15 his number.

B: 61432.

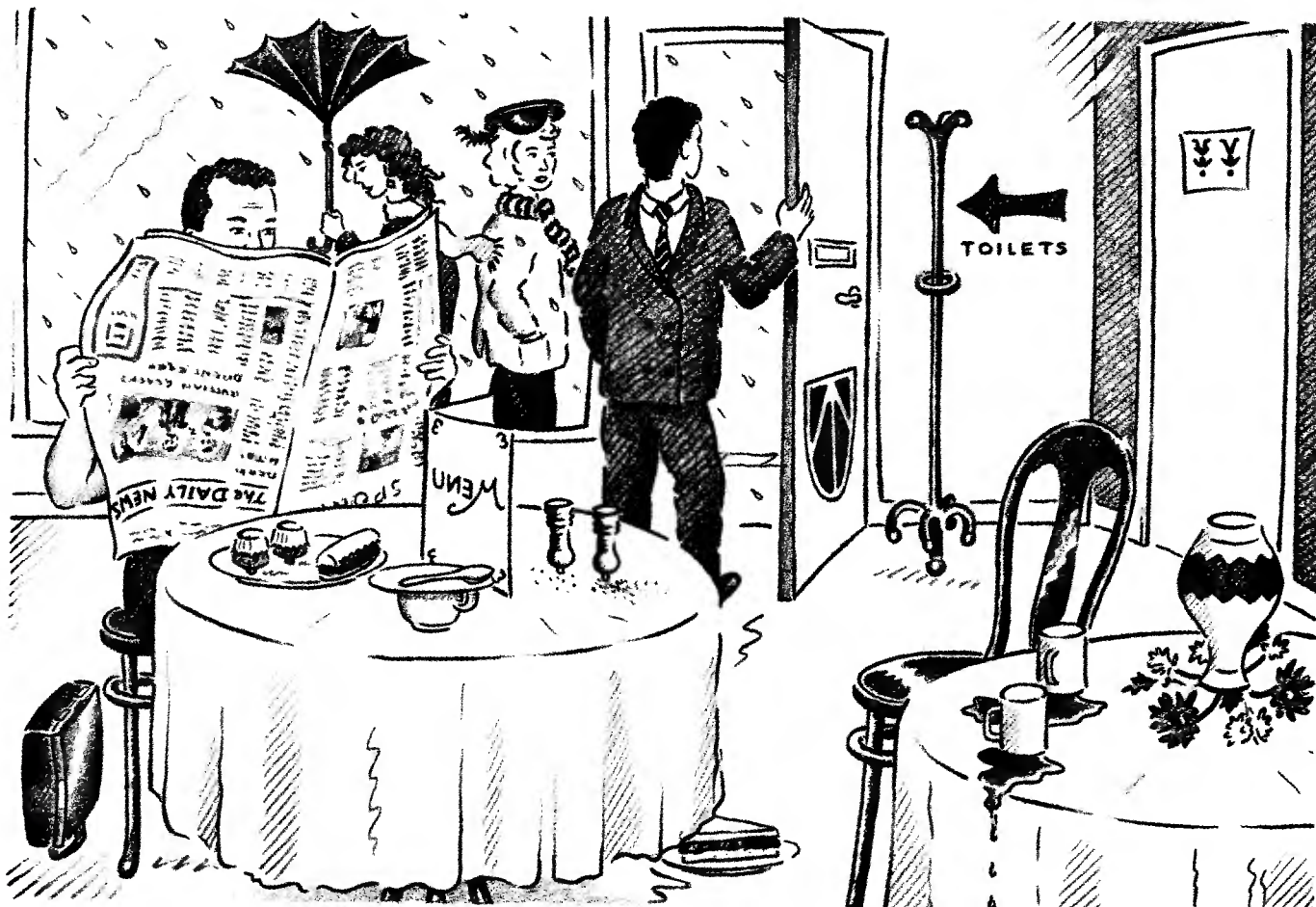
be	do	have	know	look	phone	read	take
----	----	------	------	------	-------	------	------

2 Should or would?

1. If I were you, In't do it like that.
2. I think you phone the police.
3. you like a cup of tea?
4. It be better if you turned it upside down.
5. I think everybody stop smoking.
6. Ann said that she be here at six o'clock, but she isn't.
7. Peoplen't drink and drive.
8. What you do if you won a million dollars?

3 How many things are wrong in the picture? Example:

The cakes are upside down...



4 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 23, Exercise 2. Listen and practise the pronunciation of some of the sentences. Then listen again with the Student's Book open at page 70, and try to find all the differences.

5 Try to fill in the gaps in the letter without looking at the words in the box. Then look at the box for help with the words you could not guess.

Dear Al,

...1... a lot for your last letter. ...2... I ...3... answered before; I've ...4... very busy getting ready to go to New York.

I was really sorry ...5... about your trouble with Sally, especially because it's ...6... going on for so long. You ...7... try to make a decision soon, I think - it's bad for ...8... of you to go on like this. I think perhaps it would ...9... if you separated, but of course I might be ...10... - I don't know Sally very well.

You know, if ...11... I'd go away for a couple of ...12... If you were ...13... you could think things out ...14... and decide what to do. ...15... take your holiday now and go off to Scotland or somewhere like that? I'm ...16... it would do you a lot of good.

Write again ...17... and let me know how things are going. And don't ...18... to kiss Julie for me.

Ann sends her ...19...

Yours,

6 A friend of yours has a problem. For example: he or she doesn't like his or her job; or is having trouble with a parent/child/wife/husband/lover; or has money problems; or can't decide what to do after leaving school. Write a short letter giving your opinion. Use some of the words and expressions from Exercise 5 and from the Student's Book lesson.

be better been been both calmly by yourself forget
haven't to hear I were you love should soon Sorry
sure Thanks weeks wrong Why don't you

24 How about Thursday?

1 Complete the conversation.

SARAH: Hello, Steve.1..... is Sarah. How are you?
 STEVE: OK.2..... about you?
 SARAH: Oh, I'm3..... Listen, Steve. I'm having a party this weekend. Are you4..... on Sunday?
 STEVE: Saturday? Well, it's a5..... difficult. I'm6..... Ann and her family in the evening.
 SARAH: No, Sunday.
 STEVE: Oh, I'm sorry. I7..... Saturday. Sunday might be OK. It8.....9..... time?
 SARAH: Oh, any time after eight.
 STEVE: I can't manage eight, but I'll come a bit10..... Say, nine.
 SARAH: That's fine. Any time you like.
 STEVE: Where?
 SARAH: My11..... Bring a bottle.
 STEVE: OK. Thanks12.....13..... then.
 SARAH: Bye.

2 Put in the right prepositions: *in, on, at, before* or *until*.

1. 'When's your birthday?' '..... two weeks.'
2. I'll see you again Tuesday.
3. I'll be on holiday from tomorrow the end of August.
4. Goodnight. See you the morning.
5. I must finish this letter four o'clock, or I'll miss the post.
6. Hurry up – the train goes ten minutes!
7. The next meeting will be June 20th.
8. I'll be late for work Monday – I've got to go to the dentist.
9. 'Can I speak to Janet?' 'I'm afraid she's away next week.'
10. Could you look after the children supper time?
11. I'm seeing the dentist ten o'clock.

3 Imagine that you are doing some of these things tomorrow. Say how long they will take you. Example:

It will take me half an hour to wash my hair.

wash your hair write to your mother clean the kitchen make a cake
 do your ironing wash your car pack your suitcase go to the station
 run 1,500 metres drive twenty km play three sets of tennis
 learn twenty irregular verbs

4 Vocabulary. How many of these do you know the names of? Use a dictionary if necessary. Learn the words you didn't know.



5 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 24, Exercise 2 (only the first conversation is recorded here). Listen to the conversation and practise the pronunciation.

6 What are you doing next weekend or next week? Write 100 words or so.



"How about Thursday night, then?"

Summary D

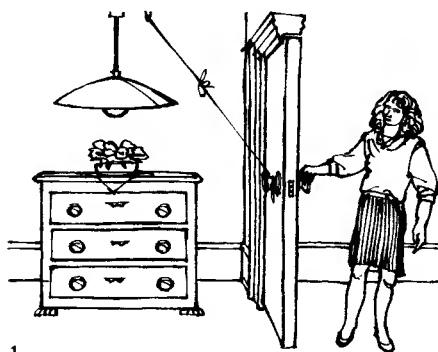
1 Underline the stressed syllables. Example:

somebody

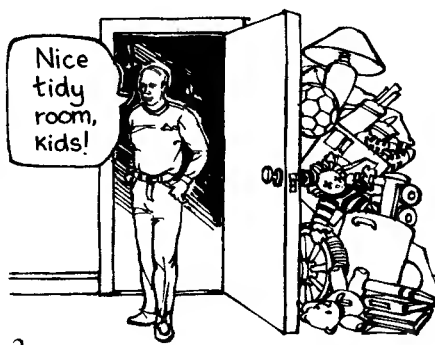
about accident animal appointment beginning certainly
 complicated depend difficult future gardening grandchild
 hospital million parent practise probably religion
 until vegetarian

2 Look at the pictures and say what will happen. Begin 'When . . .' Example:

'When she opens the door, the light will go on.'



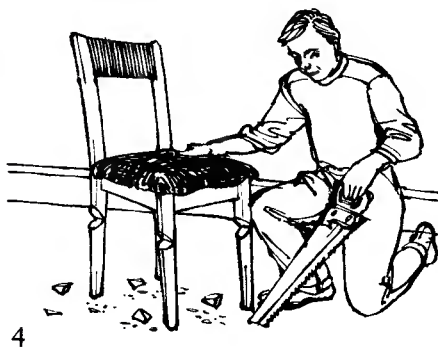
1



2



3



4



5



6

3 Do you know how to form the past tenses (and past participles) of regular verbs? Try these verbs. If you have trouble remembering the rules, they are on page 116.

join joined

apply cry explain fit
 fix guess happen hate
 mend need play start
 stay stop wait

4 Put one of the words from the box into each blank.

at	from	in	into	of	off	on	over	through
to	under	with						

- Do you eat melon a spoon or a knife and fork?
- Ask the bus driver to tell you where to get
- Shall we meet the cinema?
- Concorde flies our house twice a day; it makes a terrible noise.
- Rob jumped the swimming pool with all his clothes on – he must have been drunk!
- Some of the marchers threw stones at the police; one stone went the window of a police car, and hit a policewoman on the head.
- 'Do you know where my keys are?' 'I think they're the table the kitchen.'
- A lot the people in our village work with horses.
- We're going France for our summer holidays.
- People warm countries generally have a hard time getting used to the winter in England.
- I didn't see the cat when I walked into the room, because it was the bed.

5 Translate some or all of these sentences into your language.

1. Why do people look like their parents?
2. Carol and Lee's baby may be tall.
3. I hope my children will be good-looking.
4. Maria said that I would never get married.
5. We're going to crash!
6. I think we should take a lot of water with us.
7. We're not going to take any blankets.
8. If you see a black cat, you'll have good luck.
9. When I go to London, I'll visit Sue.
10. If I go to Scotland, I'll visit Ann.
11. If I get enough money, I'll travel round the world.
12. What do you think of the new boss?
13. I get on all right with my boss.
14. I didn't realise that you didn't like your job.
15. If I were you, I'd turn it upside down.
16. I'd like you to meet my mother.
17. See you on Thursday. Bye.
18. I'd like to make an appointment to see Dr Gray.
19. Tuesday's a bit difficult. What about Thursday?
20. Let me look in my diary.

6 Write about your plans for this evening / tomorrow / the weekend. Example:

*This evening I'm going to stay in and wash my hair.
We're going to spend the weekend in the mountains.*



"You ought to take a rest and forget all about windows for a while, Ted."

Revision D

1 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. We anything until we hear from you. (*not do*)
2. I'll tell you when I (*know*)
3. If I George, I'll tell him to come and talk to you. (*see*)
4. I happy when this job is finished. (*be*)
5. What if the police find out? (*happen*)
6. It'll be nice when we back home again. (*get*)
7. I your luggage until you come back. (*look after*)
8. When you decide to leave, phone us and we a flight for you. (*reserve*)
9. I'm going to take a short holiday when I this job. (*finish*)
10. Don't forget to put the lights out when you to bed. (*go*)

2 Put *when* or *until* in each blank.

1. Could you let me know Ms Amis arrives
2. I can't give you an answer I hear from my bank.
3. the post comes, could you see if there's a letter from Emma in it?
4. Could you wait the children get home from school?
5. Eric's mother will be staying with us Christmas.
6. Who's going to look after your dog you go to America?
7. you make mayonnaise, you should make sure the oil and the egg are both at the same temperature.
8. Just keep straight on you see a big church; then take the first turning on the right.
9. I'll wait for you 9.00; if you haven't come by then, I'll know you have missed the train.
10. Don't try to get off the train it is moving

3 Circle the word in each group that is different, and write why.

1. kettle saucepan plate frying-pan

You can cook in the others.

OR: You don't eat out of the others.

2. wheel plate shoe penny
3. cow pig fish chicken
4. middle both side end
5. grandchild uncle friend mother
6. heavy red green purple
7. pants shirt trousers wear
8. boss office postman driver
9. film newspaper letter book
10. bus train lorry armchair

4 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Revision Lesson D, Listening Exercise 3. Listen to the song and try to write down the first verse (up to *I just don't know . . .*). Check on Student's Book page 124.

5 *Strange but true!* Read this with a dictionary.

About 5,700 stars can be seen on a clear night without a telescope.

If you live in an old house in the country, you may be sharing your house with up to 3,000 animals and insects.

A mole takes about eight hours to tunnel 100 metres.

Diamonds and coal are made of the same chemical element.

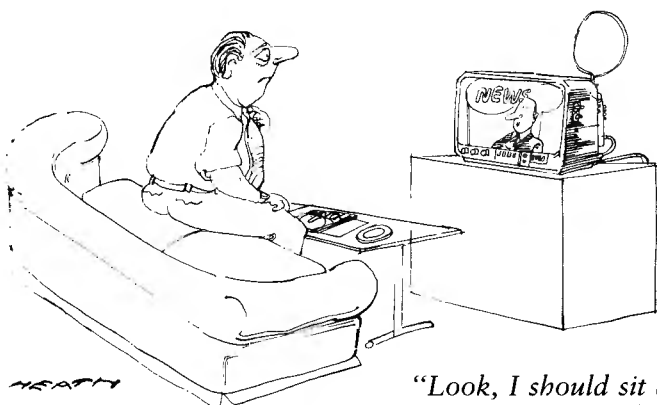
Baby whales increase their weight by ten pounds an hour.

During a lifetime, a person's heart pumps enough blood to fill the fuel tanks of 2,100 Boeing 747s.

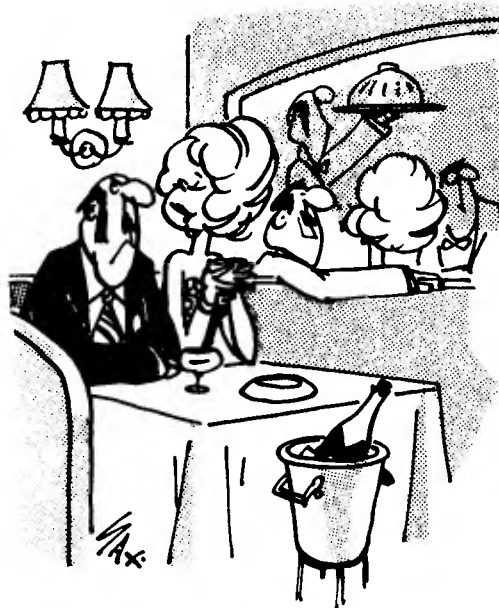
You get taller when you are asleep.

There were ten days in the ancient Egyptian week.

The silk made by spiders is stronger than steel.



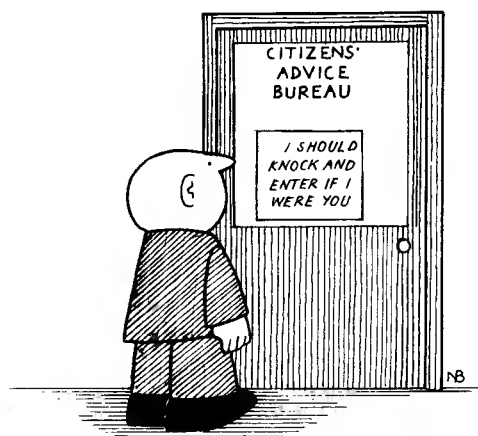
"Look, I should sit down.
Have you got a drink?
Now it's nothing to worry
about, really it isn't . . ."



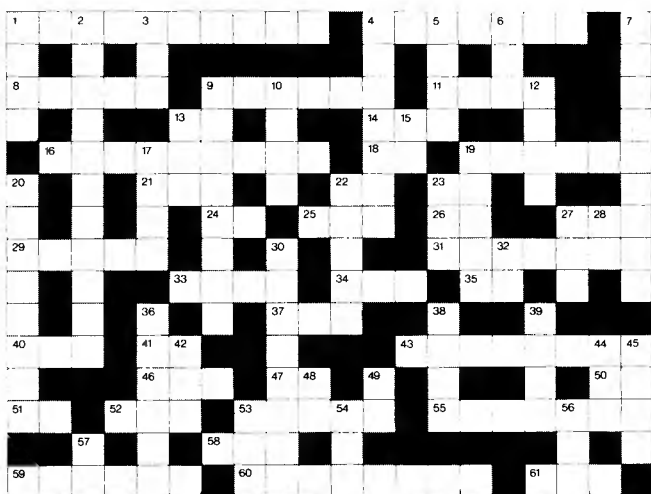
"I love you for what you are – rich."



" . . . And here is the weather picture for noon tomorrow."



6 Try the crossword.



ACROSS

1. Child's child.
4. When I make a, the boss gets angry.
8. I'm going to for a new job.
9. Your sweater's out.
11. 'What are you doing?' 'Trying to
13. See you Thursday.
14. Thing at the end of your foot.
16. Tuesday's a bit - how about Thursday?
18. See you a couple of hours.
19. You can look out of this.
21. Not birds can fly.
22. Would you like orange?
23. Tea coffee?
24. I usually get at six o'clock.
25. A baby bird comes out of this.
26. There are people living on the moon.
27. You can drive this.
29. An animal that lives in the desert.
31. Scotland is not part of
33. 'How are you?' 'Very, thanks.'
34. The opposite of *beginning*.
35. The opposite of *come*.
37. You can see with this.
40. This is a good thing to do with food.
41. What colour your girlfriend's hair?
43. If you're not 33 *across*, you might have to go to this place.
46. A colour.
47. 'I'm tired.' '..... am I.'
50. The same as 35 *across*.
51. Would you like come to a party?
52. Water below 0 degrees Celsius.
53. This person works in a 43 *across*.
55. A thousand thousand.
58. How long are you staying here
59. Don't to lock the door when you go out.
60. to lock the door when you go out.
61. Not all birds can

DOWN

1. I was to hear that you got on well with your boss.
2. I'd like to make an to see Dr Carter.
3. I eat three times a
4. We're having the Directors' on Tuesday.
5. 35 *across*, 50 *across* and 32 *down* are all the
6. A woman's name.
7. In 1931-32, an American walked from California to Turkey.
9. Is service?
10. If you buy something from me, I it to you.
12. The past participle of *do*.
13. Could you fill up with petrol and check the, please?
15. I live the fifth floor.
17. Prices often rise, but they never
19. Not right.
20. If you have an, you might have to go to 43 *across*.
22. 'This is a really boring film.' 'I don't; I think it's very good.'
23. Half of half of half of eight.
27. My father speak six languages.
28. 'What does she do?' 'She's economist.'
30. It's a to work for her.
32. The same as 50 *across*.
36. This is round.
38. When I was a child we were very poor. We all lived in one
39. You meet a tall dark stranger.
42. You can do this with your 37 *across*.
44. He was born in London 35 years
45. Sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting?
48. Coffee tea?
49. That man.
53. I neither like dislike this music.
54. The same as 42 *down*.
56. Not 33 *across*.
57. 'Sue's had a baby.' 'A girl a boy?'

25 From tree to paper

1 Put in the correct verb forms.

1. Postmen and postwomen, police officers, judges and Members of Parliament are by the government, from our taxes. (*pay*)
2. A lot of modern medicines are from plants that grow in the tropical rain forests. (*make*)
3. Most bread in England is now by large industrial bakeries. (*produce*)
4. Some of America's coal is by women – but none of Britain's is. (*mine*)
5. Rice is not everywhere in China, only in places where it is hot and wet. (*grow*)
6. There is a small factory near our house where microlight aircraft are (*build*)
7. In my son's school, children are by a different teacher for each subject. (*teach*)
8. Great numbers of birds are from Gibraltar every year, as they pass by on their migrations. (*see*)
9. Do you think that a lot of medicine is to people who don't need it? (*give*)
10. Where are stamps in your country? (*sell*)

2 Grammar revision. Put in *the* if necessary.

1. Our house was built in the fifteenth century.
2. paper is made from wood.
3. It was invented by Chinese.
4. You can travel to United States by air or by sea.
5. Could you answer telephone? I'm busy.
6. iron is not so strong as steel.
7. 'Do you like this song?' '..... words are stupid, but I like music.'
8. 'Would you like a glass of wine?' 'No, thanks, I don't drink alcohol.'
9. Could you tell me way to nearest police station?

3 Write sentences to say what countries these languages are spoken in. Example:

French is spoken in France, Belgium,

Japanese	Chinese	Arabic	German
English	Spanish	Russian	Greek

4 Read the first text with a dictionary. Then fill in the blanks in the second text with words from the first.

SOME OF BRITAIN'S IMPORTS AND EXPORTS

Britain imports petroleum, mainly from the Middle East and Libya; cars from Europe and Japan; lamb and butter from New Zealand; and fruit from the EEC, South America and Africa.

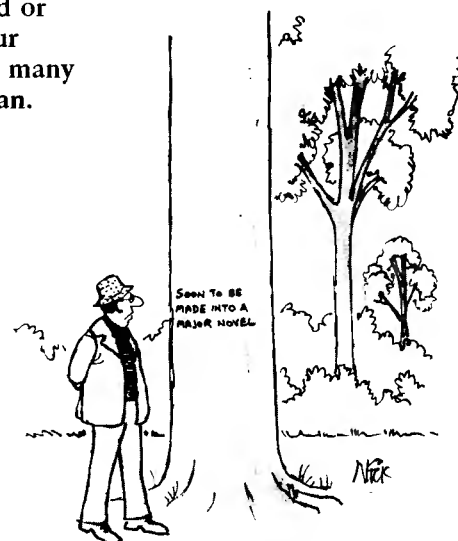
Some of Britain's exports are: chemicals, which are produced all over the country; chocolate and sugar confectionery, which are made mostly in York and the South West; drinks, which are produced mainly in Scotland; and metals and metal products, which are manufactured in many regions including Yorkshire, South Wales, the Midlands and the Northern Region.

SOME OF AUSTRALIA'S IMPORTS AND EXPORTS

Australia 1 books from Britain, electronic equipment 2 Japan, 3 cars and heavy machines 4 Britain and the USA. Some of Australia's exports are: wool, 5 is produced 6 in the dry regions and 7 New South Wales; wheat, which 8 grown in 9 South East and in the region of Perth; sugar, which is 10 mainly in Queensland; and minerals (lead, zinc, etc.) which 11 imported 12 by Britain and Japan.

5 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 25, Exercise 2 (only the first six sentences are recorded here). Listen, and try to write down all the sentences.

6 Write about three things that are grown or manufactured or produced in your country; add as many details as you can.



26 Who? What? Where? . . .

1 Put the correct form of the verb in each blank.

- Last Saturday I was to Cambridge to visit a friend, and my wife wanted to Reading to run in a marathon. (*go; go*)
- I telephoned the railway station what times the trains were. (*find out*)
- I was that the 8.14 train would get me to London in time to reach Cambridge by 10.30. (*tell*)
- So my wife drove me to the station on her way to Reading, and I was on the platform at 8.05. (*stand*)
- A few minutes later, it was that the train was to be late. (*announce; go*)
- I knew I was to miss my connection in London; but I couldn't phone my friend to tell him because the telephone on the platform was (*go; break*)
- Meanwhile, my wife was other problems: there were road works on the way to Reading, and the main road was (*have; close*)
- After a while she realised that she was lost; she was afraid she was going late. (*be*)
- But she finally the sports ground. The gate was and there was a big sign saying 'Reading Harriers 2nd Annual Marathon – Sunday August 27th'. (*find; lock*)
- Some days it's a mistake to get out of bed, as my mother used (*say*)

2 Look at these examples:

The Pastoral Symphony was written by Beethoven.
(= Beethoven wrote it.)

The Pastoral Symphony was written with a pen made from a feather. (= Beethoven used a pen made from a feather to write it.)

Beethoven's foot was injured by a falling stone.
(The stone fell by itself.)

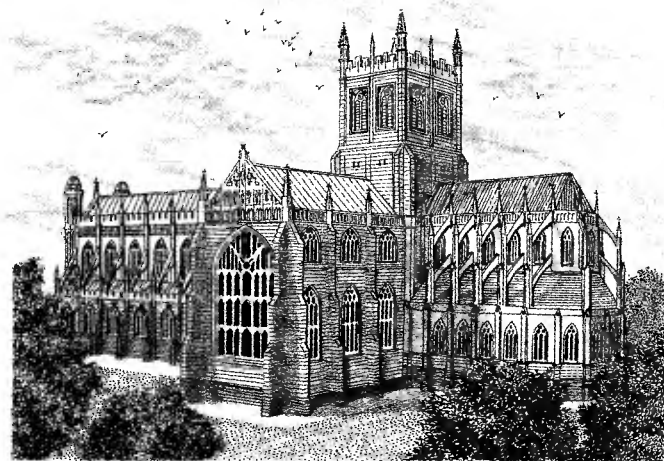
Now put *by* or *with* in each sentence.

- This land was taken from the Apaches the white people.
- Some oriental rugs are made very young children.
- Hollandaise sauce should always be stirred a wooden spoon.
- This letter was written a left-handed person.
- He was knocked down a flower pot that fell out of a seventh-floor window.
- He was hit on the head and face a broken chair leg.
- The cheese was covered a damp cloth.
- I have been asked the Prime Minister to make no announcement until we have further information.

3 Complete the text with words from the box. Use a dictionary.

built	rebuilt	repaired	added	damaged
used	burnt down			

Glastrop Cathedral was founded by Henry Morcam in 1442, and was1..... between 1443 and 1458. During the Civil War it was2..... as a military headquarters, and was badly3..... It was4..... and restored after the war by Lord Evelyn Fairfax, and a new tower was5..... In 1824 part of the Cathedral was6.....; it was not7..... until 1883.



Now read these notes and write a text about the house.

Stroud House: built James Stroud 1676
18th century used as farmhouse
damaged by fire 1776
bought Andrew Scott
repaired, new floor added
badly damaged in World War II
bought National Trust after war
completely rebuilt
opened to public 1968



4 Put one of the expressions from the box in each blank.

have a talk	have breakfast	have a look
have a dream	have a wonderful time	
have a shower	have a drink	have a baby

- I'm sure you'll in Corsica; we've been there three times and enjoyed it every time.
- What time do you usually
- Have you heard the news? Ellen and Jim are going to! I'm going to be a grandmother!
- Sit down and while I finish this, and then we can talk.
- I'm going to have to with Brian – I think he's been using our phone to call Australia.
- I sometimes that I'm locked in a small room.
- I'm so hot and tired! I think I'll before I start dinner, if you don't mind.
- I think I heard the doorbell ring – could you?

Now put *have* into the correct tense.

- Can I phone you back? We lunch right now.
- I a conversation with Alison this morning when Jerry came into her office.
- I a day off next Friday, so I'll try to finish this by Thursday.
- We trouble starting the car when it's cold.

5 Revision. Complete the table of irregular verbs. Learn the ones you don't know.

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
speak
spell
spend
stand
swim
take
teach
tell
think
understand
wear
win
write

6 In a race, the results were as follows:

James beat Olson.
 Olson was beaten by Andrews.
 Peters was beaten by George and James.
 Peters beat Smith.
 Andrews was beaten by George, who was beaten by James.
 Andrews beat Peters, and so did Olson.

Who won?

27 Probability

1 Put in *will*, *might*, *can't* or *must*.

- Next Monday be my 30th birthday.
- I go to Spain next week, but I'm not sure yet.
- 'Isn't that Joan over there?' 'No, it be her – Joan's much taller than that.'
- There's somebody at the door. Do you think it be the postman?
- 'I've been travelling since four o'clock.' 'You be tired.'
- We haven't made definite plans for our holiday yet. We go to Greece or Italy, or we even stay at home.
- This be John's coat. There's a letter addressed to him in the pocket.
- 'I'm getting married next week.' 'You mean it!' 'I do.'

2 Is it true? You can use your dictionary. Use one of the expressions in the box to write what you think about each statement.

It must be true.	It's probably true.
It could be true.	It might be true.
It's probably not true.	It can't be true.

1. Some early skis have been found which are at least 4,500 years old.
2. A long time ago, mountains in Norway, Scotland, Greenland and the north-east US belonged to the same mountain chain.
3. When powerful people choose people to work with them, they usually choose people who will lie to them about how well things are going.
4. There is a fish that is more poisonous than any poisonous snake.
5. Some animals living very deep in the ocean can 'see' the extremely hot water that comes up from the ocean floor.
6. Our ideas about what makes a person good-looking depend partly on what country we grew up in.
7. In 1988, the greatest physicist in the world was a man who could not write, or even speak clearly.
8. Most algebra problems cannot be solved.
9. We will never be able to predict the weather accurately for longer than a few days.

3 What did they say? Rewrite the sentences as in the example.

Dolores Ibarruri: 'It is better to die on your feet than to live on your knees!'

Dolores Ibarruri said that it was better to die on your feet than to live on your knees.

1. Virginia Woolf: 'The eyes of others are our prisons; their thoughts are our cages.'
2. Texas Guinan: 'Success has killed more men than bullets.'
3. Eleanor Roosevelt: 'No one can make you feel inferior without your consent.'
4. Mae West: 'Between two evils, I always pick the one I've never tried before.' Also: 'Too much of a good thing can be wonderful.'
5. Dodie Smith: 'Noble deeds and hot baths are the best cures for depression.'
6. Adele Davis: 'Thousands upon thousands of persons have studied disease; almost no one has studied health.'
7. Mother Teresa: 'Our work brings people face to face with love.'

4 Here are some of the questions from Fred and Janet's first conversation from the recording for the Student's Book. Rewrite them as in the example.

Fred: 'What's your name?'

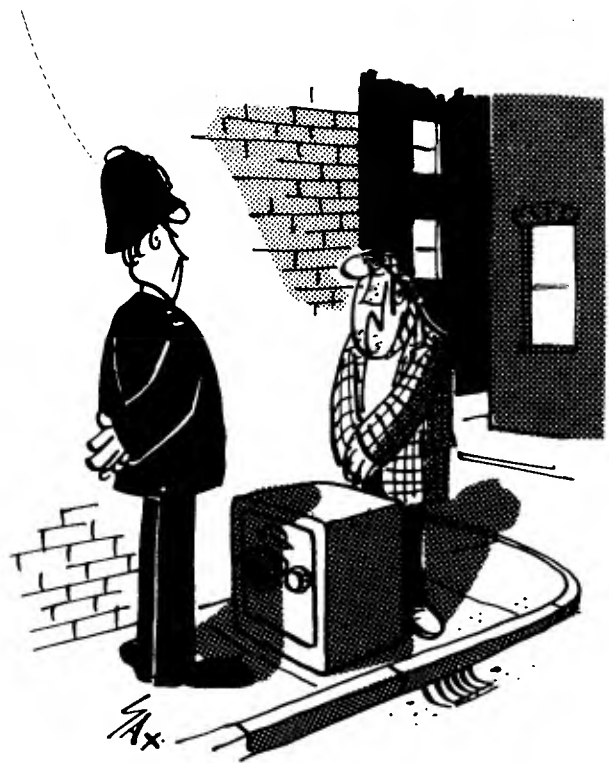
Fred asked Janet what her name was.

1. Janet: 'What do you do, Fred?'
2. Janet: 'Where do you work?'
3. Janet: 'Are you based in London?'
4. Janet: 'Have I really (got an interesting face)?'
5. Fred: 'Are you an actress?'
6. Janet: 'You've got a Boeing 747?'
7. Janet: 'What does your father do?'

5 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 27, Exercise 1 (only the first part of the conversation is recorded here). Listen, and write down everything you hear.

6 Write answers to the questions.

1. What have people said to you that was not true? Write three things. (For example, *When I was small, my brother told me that babies were brought by rabbits.*)
2. Think of three questions you have asked people in the last few days and write them down. (For example, *I asked my English teacher if she spoke any other languages.*)
3. Is there a God? Why? Begin *There must/may/can't be a God, because . . .*



"Hold this for a moment, he said – and I haven't seen him since."

28 Somebody with blue eyes

1 Study the examples, and then decide where to put *both* in each sentence.

ONE-PART VERBS

We **both** speak Chinese.

My sister and I **both** like music.

TWO-PART VERBS

We **were both** born in September.

They **have both** studied in the USA.

Anne and Peter **can both** sing very well.

ARE/WERE

We **are both** fair-haired.

The two children **were both** very hungry.

1. My parents work in the same bank.
2. When I arrived, they were cooking.
3. You look like your mother.
4. Our children are tall and slim.
5. We have been in hospital recently.
6. The cars cost a fortune.
7. Alice and Judy can play chess.
8. I think those trees are going to die.

2 Do you remember how to write plurals? Write the plurals of these words.

boy	way	coach
watch	lorry	difference
lady	reason	party
box	body	tomato
gun	valley	economy
day	switch	church
potato		

Do you remember the plurals of these words?

Look them up in your dictionary if you are not sure.

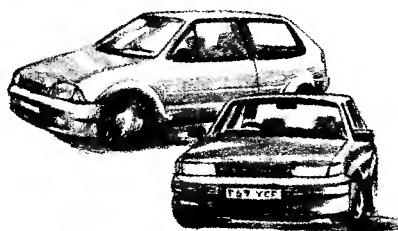
child	person	woman
wife	knife	foot

3 Where are they made? Example:

Wine is made in France, Spain, Australia,



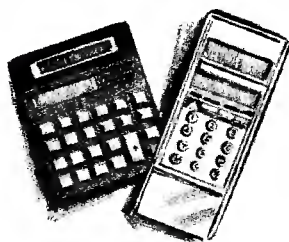
perfume



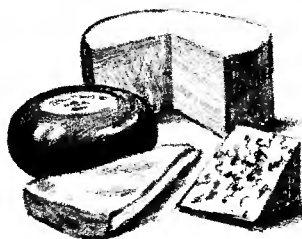
cars



cameras



calculators



cheese



wine



shoes

4 Spelling: double letters and single letters. Put another letter in where necessary. Examples:

thin...ing look...ing

slim...er

short...er

prof...es...ion

qual...if...ications

at...ractive

fair-hair...ed

ed...ucation

program...e

wor...ied

depres...ed

hap...en...ed

show...ed

ner...vous

dif...er...ent

wal...et

sit...ing

5 Copy the text, choosing the correct verb forms.

Yesterday the doorbell (*was ringing / rang*) while I (*was having / had*) breakfast. As I (*was going / went*) to answer it, I (*was falling / fell*) over a pile of books in the hall. By the time I (*was getting / got*) to the door, there was no one there – but the postman (*was getting / got*) back into his van a few houses away. I (*was running / ran*) after him, but he (*wasn't hearing / didn't hear*) me and (*was driving / drove*) off. So I (*was going / went*) back home. When I (*was getting / got*) there, the door was shut, and I (*was realising / realised*) that I didn't have my key. My son was in the house, and so I (*was ringing / rang*) the bell, but

he (*wasn't answering / didn't answer*): he (*was listening / listened*) to music and (*wasn't hearing / didn't hear*) the bell. I (*was remembering / remembered*) that the kitchen window was open, so I (*was going / went*) round to the back to try and get in that way. While I (*was climbing / climbed*) in the window, the electricity man (*was arriving / arrived*) to read the meter, and I had to explain the situation to him. I still don't know if he (*was believing / believed*) me. Anyway, I (*was getting / got*) in, only to find that the cats (*were eating / ate*) my breakfast. Then the doorbell (*was ringing / rang*).

6 Read the description of the first woman. Write a description from the notes about the second woman. Describe the third woman.



Carolyn

Ruth

Deborah

CAROLYN

Carolyn is a tall dark-haired woman in her late thirties. She is very pretty, with an oval face, beautiful fair skin and very light blue eyes. Her hair is straight and quite short. She is rather plump, but she dresses very attractively. She usually looks quite cheerful in a quiet way. She looks like a person who is easy to talk to.

RUTH

short, black, early twenties
quite plain, but very interesting
face
hair: short, curly, black
eyes: big, brown
nose: small
face: round
skin: very dark
slim, athletic-looking
dresses casually
looks friendly and enthusiastic



"My God! I've got last year's body!"



"Got any S shirts?"

29 Things

1 Singular countable noun, plural countable noun or uncountable noun? Complete the lists.

shirt eye hair ear-rings ears jeans
wool glasses water watch apple beer
snow foot bank money feet pounds

SINGULAR COUNTABLE PLURAL COUNTABLE

shirt..... ear-rings.....

UNCOUNTABLE

water.....

2 Answer some of these questions using *too*. Use a dictionary if necessary. Example:

Why can't you pick up a car? *Because a car's too heavy.*

1. Why can't a knife cut a stone?
2. Why can't you jump over a house?
3. Why can't you throw a fridge?
4. Why can't you sunbathe at the North Pole?
5. Why can't you put a horse in your bath?
6. Why can't you hear your heart beating?
7. Why can't you drink boiling water?
8. Why can't you read in the middle of a wood at midnight?
9. Why can't you jump across the Mississippi?
10. Why can't you eat rice before it's cooked?
11. Why can't you stand up in a car?

Now answer some of the questions using *enough*. Example:

Why can't you pick up a car? *Because I'm not strong enough.*

6 This is part of a real conversation between people who were playing 'Twenty questions'. Read the conversation and decide what the first speaker was thinking of – a flower, a glass, a typewriter, a guitar, a car key, a cat, a tin-opener, a stamp or an electric coffee-grinder.

'I'll start if you like.'

'OK.'

'You've got to tell us whether it's animal, vegetable or mineral.'

'I have to tell you?'

'Yes.'

'You don't have to ask me?'

'No, you have to tell us that and then we have to ask the rest.'

'OK. It's mineral.'

'Is it manufactured?'

'Yes.'

'Is it smaller than a loaf of bread?'

'Yes.'

'Can you burn it?'

'It wouldn't burn well, no.'

'Is it something to do with the hospital?'

'No, not necessarily.'

'Does it have moving parts?'

'Not usually. No, it doesn't.'

'Is it useful?'

'Yes.'

'In the home?'

'Yes.'

'Can you eat it?'

'No.'

'Is it a kitchen utensil?'

'I wouldn't call it a utensil.'

'Have you got one in your house?'

'Yes.'

'More than one?'

'More than one.'

'More than ten?'

'More than ten.'

'Does it always come in a group –'

'No.'

'Anything to do with electrics?'

'No.'

'Are there any on this table?'

'Yes.'

'Is it a?'

'Yes.'

'I knew it was a from the very beginning.'

3 Can you see something made of wood; something made of plastic; something made of metal; something made of rubber; something made of paper; something made of stone; something made of glass? Find the names of the things in a dictionary if necessary and write them down. Example:

Made of wood: a door; the floor.

4 Where are the stresses? Example:

plastic

~~~~~

business cotton dictionary direct discover  
education information invent liquid metal  
narrow necessary photograph photographer  
profession programme qualification something  
surprised synthetic useful wonderful

**5** Choose three of the things in the box and write five sentences to describe each one. Example:

A TYPEWRITER

*A typewriter is a thing that you write with. It is made of metal and plastic. It is bigger than a watch but not as big as a car. It is quite heavy. Some typewriters are electric.*

|               |         |             |            |
|---------------|---------|-------------|------------|
| a fridge      | a bath  | a car       | a computer |
| a wine bottle | a piano | a telephone | a yacht    |
| a radio       | a house |             |            |

# 30 Self and others

**1** Six people from different countries are in the same compartment on a long train journey. They would like to talk to each other. The table shows the languages that they speak. Write sentences to show how different people can talk to each other. Examples:

*Alicia and Shu Fang can talk to each other in Spanish.*

*Alicia and Yasuko can talk to each other if Shu Fang interprets for them.*

|              | English | French | Chinese | Japanese | Spanish | German | Swahili | Arabic | Russian |
|--------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|---------|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| Alicia       |         | ✓      |         |          | ✓       |        |         |        |         |
| Shu Fang     |         |        | ✓       |          | ✓       |        |         |        |         |
| John         | ✓       |        |         |          |         |        | ✓       | ✓      |         |
| Yasuko       | ✓       |        | ✓       | ✓        |         |        |         |        |         |
| Mohammed Ali |         |        |         |          |         | ✓      |         | ✓      |         |
| Erika        | ✓       | ✓      |         |          |         | ✓      |         |        | ✓       |

**2** Do you do these things yourself, or does somebody else do them for you? Examples:

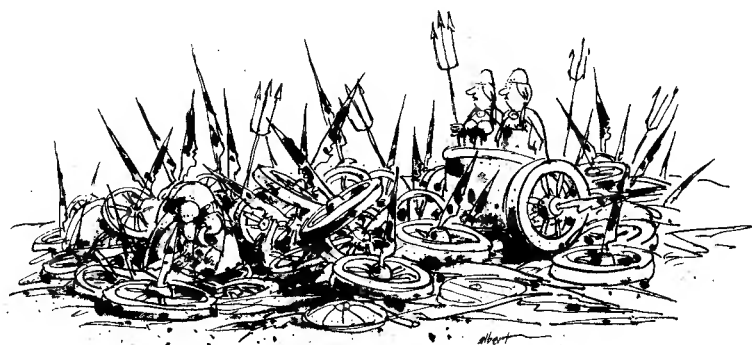
*I repair my car myself.*

*Somebody else washes my clothes.*

- |                                          |                      |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. repair your car/motorbike/<br>bicycle | 6. iron your clothes |
| 2. wash your clothes                     | 7. buy your food     |
| 3. clean your house/flat/room            | 8. cook your food    |
| 4. answer your letters                   | 9. buy your clothes  |
| 5. make your bed                         |                      |

**3** Invent ends for these sentences.

1. Parents should . . .
2. Children should . . .
3. Teachers should . . .
4. Politicians should . . .
5. Everybody should . . .
6. I should . . .



*"It's not the fighting I hate, it's the washing-up!"*



*"I'm sure you and mother will like each other."*

**4** Write out the letter, putting punctuation and capital letters where they belong.

14 september 1990

dear kevin

i'm writing to ask you for some advice barbara and i are getting very worried about richard he has been staying out very late at night and is always too tired to do well in school last week he was out till one in the morning on tuesday and wednesday he won't listen to anything we say we have tried not giving him pocket money but it doesn't do any good i am afraid that now he is sure that we are just trying to make him do what we want to show him who's boss but the truth is we are worried about his future

i know you and simon had a rough patch when he was sixteen or so what did you do about it how did you handle it any advice you could give us would be very welcome we have run out of ideas ourselves

sorry to write such a short letter but i want to get this in the post today give my love to angela and the kids

yours

tony

**5** Write an answer to the letter in Exercise 4. Or write a letter giving advice to somebody you know (a real person).

**6** Read this with a dictionary.

#### WHAT A BLESSING YOUNGER BROTHERS ARE

When my sister says to me,  
'Go and put the kettle on,'  
I say to my younger brother,  
'Go and put the kettle on,'  
So my brother goes and puts the kettle on.  
When my younger brother says to me,  
'Bring a tin of fruit up,'  
I say to my elder sister,  
'Bring a tin of fruit up,'  
But she says,  
'Go yourself you lazy thing,'  
So I say to my younger brother,  
'Go yourself you lazy thing!'  
So he goes and brings the tin of fruit up.

(Catherine Frankland, aged 13)

*You have to love your own  
baby because anyone else  
finds them a newsance.*

(Patrick, aged 8)

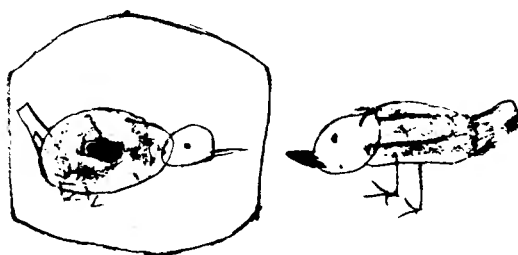
'Newsance': nuisance – something irritating

*I know my mother and Father  
Love each other because my  
mother cooks him his favorite  
roast every night*

(Theresa, aged 8)

*love is important because if  
people did not love each other  
there wouldn't be any people.*

(Lynn, aged 7)



*My budgie broke his neck  
because  
he was always kissing himself  
in the mirror.*

(Tim, aged 6)



# Summary E

**1** Write sentences to say what these things are made of. Use a dictionary if necessary.

*I think the boot is made of plastic.*

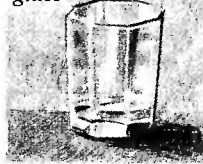
vase



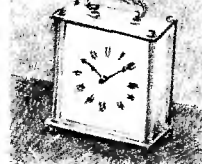
ship



glass



clock



coin



sweater



boot



handbag



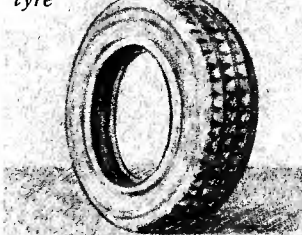
playing cards



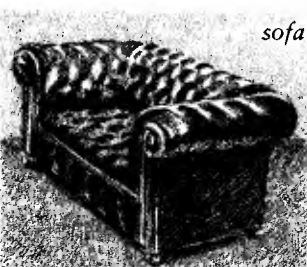
statue



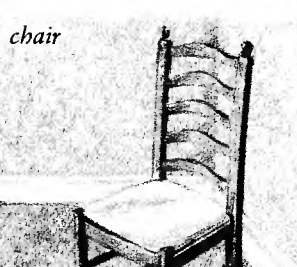
tyre



telephone



sofa



chair



cinema

**2** Put in *me, you, him, her* etc.; *myself, yourself, himself, herself* etc.; *each other, somebody else*.

1. 'Mary's going to marry a Japanese.' 'Good heavens! How will they understand ..?'
2. I often talk to ..... when I'm alone.
3. 'I don't like these flowers.' 'Well, give them to ..... 'Who?' ..'
4. 'Why are you walking like that?' 'I hurt ..... playing football.'
5. 'Who went with .....?' 'Nobody. She went by ..'
6. Stop looking at ..... in the mirror - you're not as beautiful as all that.
7. 'Who does the cleaning for old Mrs Collins?' 'Nobody. She does it ..'
8. Little Joe is only two, but he can dress ..
9. He never listens to .., and she never listens to ..

**4** Do you prefer to do these things by yourself or with somebody else?

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| listen to music | go to the cinema |
| go shopping     | go on holiday    |
| have lunch      | go for a walk    |

What other things do you prefer to do by yourself or with somebody else?

**3** Match the nouns and the adjectives. Use a dictionary if necessary.

disco music    a diamond  
helium    lightning    a whale  
lead    a mouse    Superman  
a tortoise    an atom    butter  
the Amazon    the Bering Strait  
a Californian redwood tree

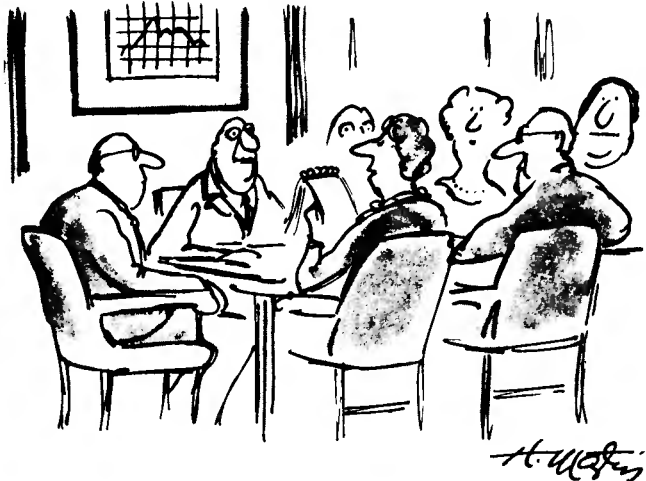
|       |       |        |
|-------|-------|--------|
| hard  | soft  | strong |
| loud  | quiet | big    |
| small | wide  | narrow |
| tall  | light | heavy  |
| fast  | slow  |        |

## 5 Translate these into your language.

1. Most paper is made from wood.
2. English is spoken here.
3. He asked me where I worked.
4. It must be true.
5. It can't be true.
6. Children should do some of the housework themselves.
7. Do you think that people who are in love should tell each other everything?
8. They're talking about themselves.
9. They're talking about each other.
10. He's not going to marry Judy; he's fallen in love with somebody else.
11. We both read the newspaper every day.
12. Neither of us has got a cat.



"All right – what have the Wright-Pattersons got now?"



"Mr Jepson said that while I was sending out for coffee he would like a hamburger. Mr Willis said that he thought he would like a hamburger, too, medium with no tomato. Ms Lester said that that sounded good and that she would like a hamburger, too, rare with a side of French fries. Mr Anderson said that if everybody else was going to have something to eat he might as well have a meatball sandwich and a piece of apple pie. Mrs Colby said she'd like a slice of anchovy pizza and a bag of Fritolays . . ."

## 6 Here is some of the vocabulary from Lesson 30. Write a short story using at least ten of the words and expressions – more if you can.

housework; clean; cook; decorate; iron; mend; shop; wash; wash up; employ; think about; look at; feel sorry for; visit; photograph; fall in love with; marry; hurt; choose; teach; learn; free; married; honest; somebody else; each other.



"Hello, George – remember you said that although I was going to marry Martin James you'd always be waiting for me if ever I should change my mind?"



"We have a description, sir: the grey-blue eyes were steady but cold, the mouth hard and cruel with an arrogant curl to the upper lip, while the deep lines running from the almost Roman nose to frame the wilful chin spoke of selfishness and passion."

# Revision E

## 1 Match the beginnings and the ends of the definitions.

|                |                                               |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| An American is | a place where you can watch films.            |
| A match is     | a person who comes from America.              |
| A cinema is    | a thing that you light a cigarette with.      |
| A chair is     | a piece of furniture for sitting on.          |
| Breakfast is   | getting from a lower place to a higher place. |
| Water is       | a meal that you eat in the morning.           |
| Climbing is    | something you wash yourself in.               |

Now choose ten or more of these and write definitions for them.

|               |             |                 |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|
| a businessman | an office   | a lighter       |
| a guitar      | juice       | a cheque        |
| a motorbike   | paper       | returning       |
| a butcher     | a key       | phoning someone |
| hair          | a passport  | lunch           |
| a neck        | a camp site | a customer      |
| a hat         | sugar       | tea             |
| a neighbour   | a canteen   | a map           |
| stealing      | preferring  | a dentist       |
| a nose        | a car       | medicine        |
| a cafe        | a lorry     | spelling        |
| pepper        | a cassette  | a driver        |
| a jacket      | an ear      | a mirror        |
| refusing      | a disco     | milk            |

## 2 Look at this example.

*a book*

Is it animal, vegetable or mineral?

It's vegetable and mineral.

Is it alive?

No, it isn't.

Is it useful?

Yes, it is.

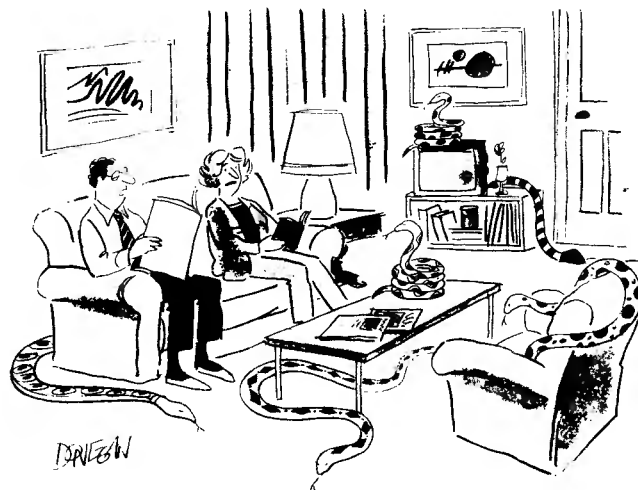
Now answer these questions.

*a leather handbag*

1. Is it animal, vegetable or mineral?
2. Is it alive?
3. Can you eat it?
4. Is it made of wool?
5. Is it useful?
6. Can you find it in a kitchen?
7. Is it liquid?
8. Is it very heavy?
9. Is it soft?
10. Is it manufactured?
11. Have you got one of these?
12. Can you see one now?
13. Do most people have one?
14. Can you put things in it?
15. Is it made of plastic?
16. Can you open and close it?

## 3 If you have Student's Cassette B, find Revision Lesson E, Listening Exercise 1 (only the first speaker is recorded here). Look up the words in the box in your dictionary. Then listen to the recording and try to write it all down.

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| rationalise | aware |
|-------------|-------|



"Don't ask me - I thought they were yours."



#### 4 Read the text with a dictionary.

##### IRON AND STEEL

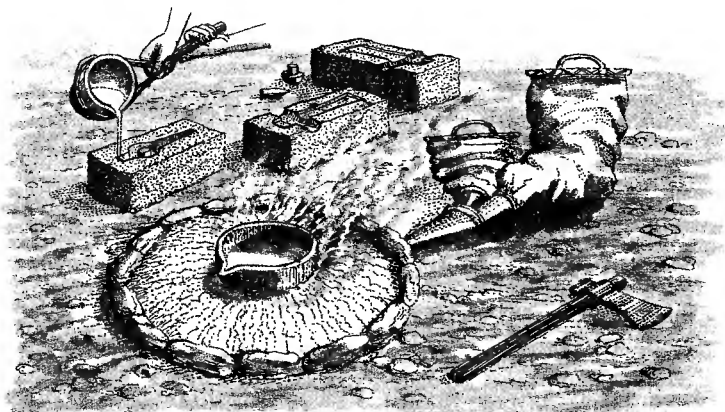
Copper and tin were used before iron: they melt at a lower temperature, and can be mixed to form a useful metal called bronze.

Iron was probably first extracted from meteorites, perhaps around 3000 BC. (Iron ornaments dating from 5,000 years ago have been found in the Middle East.) Later, iron was extracted from iron ore (impure iron) by the Hittites, around 2000 BC. The iron was first heated, then hammered to remove the impurities, then cooled. Finally, the iron was heated again and shaped into tools or weapons.

Later, in India first of all, people found out how to make fires hot enough to melt iron (at a temperature of 1,539°C), by driving air through the fuel. This made it possible to produce steel. Steel is made from iron mixed with a little carbon (0.15%–0.25%). Steel is harder than pure iron, and is less brittle (it does not break as easily). Every motorist is the owner of a ton of steel.

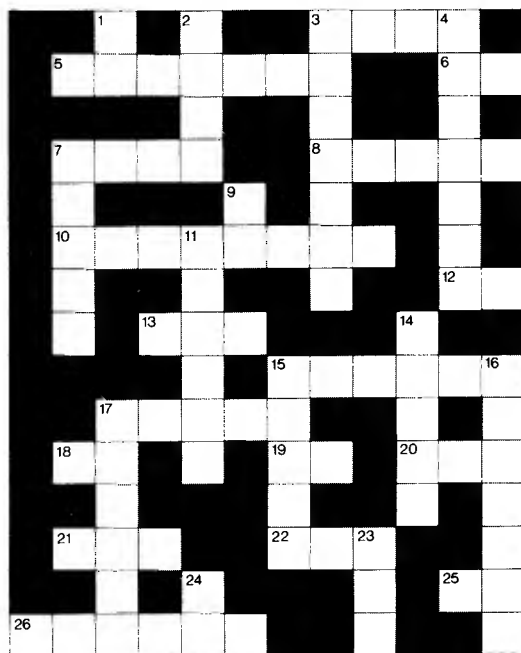
Now put these in the correct order.

- Hotter fires became possible.
- People got iron from meteorites.
- Steel was produced.
- Bronze was first made.
- People hit heated ore to get iron.



#### 5 Try to remember a phone conversation that you have had recently. Write about 100 words to report what was said.

#### 6 Try the crossword.



##### ACROSS

- Opposite of *quiet*.
- 'Why can't you come to the party?' '..... it's my best friend's birthday, and I'm taking him to dinner.'
- His sister's ..... architect.
- Do you ..... if I smoke?
- I've been to America .....: once in 1982 and once last year.
- Judy and I live in the same street, so we drive to work .....
- Did you ..... to Barry's yesterday?
- I've known her ..... twelve years now.

- I'm ..... the doctor about my leg tomorrow.
- Opposite of *heavy*.
- It's a quarter ..... four.
- Do you mind ..... I call you Mike?
- Be careful! I ..... my finger on that knife yesterday.
- How long ..... did you start working here?
- Opposite of *high*.
- I'm seeing her ..... Tuesday.
- Could I ..... your pen for a minute?

##### DOWN

- 'Where's John, do you know?' '..... was here a minute ago.'
- I didn't sleep well last night – the bed in the hotel was too .....
- Some shoes are made of .....
- Could you speak a little louder? I can't hear you – they're ..... and playing loud music upstairs.
- Keys are made of .....
- 'Where's the front door key?' 'I left ..... on the table.'
- Is the room warm ..... for you?
- Her family has been in the village ..... 1726.
- It's very late – is Bernard ..... at the office?
- It's ..... colder: I think it will snow tonight.
- The new car is ..... than the old one, so it's more difficult to park.
- '..... didn't Janice come?' 'I don't think she was invited.'
- Debbie wasn't home, ..... I left a message with her daughter.

# 31 Before and after

**1** Look at the examples and then join the sentences together in the same way.

I have breakfast. Then I get dressed. (*before*)

I have breakfast before I get dressed.

I go to bed. Then I read for a bit. (*after*)

I read for a bit after I go to bed.

1. I brush my teeth. Then I undress. (*before*)
2. I get into bed. Then I put the light out. (*after*)
3. I wake up. Then I get up. (*as soon as*)
4. I met Jane. Then my life changed. (*after*)
5. She was very unhappy. Then she left school. (*until*)
6. I thought I was very ill. Then I went to see the doctor. (*before*)
7. I telephoned Kate. Then I went to see her. (*before*)
8. I went to America. Then everything got better. (*after*)

**2** Which happened first?

1. Before I went to France, I studied French for six months.

First I studied French. Then I went to France.

2. After I left school, I made a lot of new friends.
3. Before I went out, I cleaned my shoes.
4. After you came to see me, I felt fine.
5. Before Andrew got to London, it started raining.
6. After it got dark, Paul went out for a walk.
7. Before I took off the handbrake, I looked in the mirror.
8. Just after your mother telephoned, your father came to see me.

**3** Put in *still*, *yet* or *already*.

1. 'Haven't you finished .....?'
2. 'No, I'm ..... working.'
3. 'When's Mary coming?' 'She's ..... here.'
4. 'Are you ready?' 'No, I haven't done my packing .....'
5. Ann's doing very well at school. She's ..... got a university place, and she's only sixteen.
6. 'What's the weather like?' 'It's ..... raining.'
7. 'Is it lunchtime?' 'Not .....'
8. 'Have you phoned Godfrey .....?' 'No, I'm going to do it this evening.'
9. Look at the time! It's ..... eight o'clock. We really must go.

**4** If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 31, Exercise 6 (only the first part of the conversation is recorded here). Listen and write down what you hear.

**5** Put in *such* or *so*.

1. His letter was ..... rude that I didn't know how to answer.
2. Ann's friends are ..... strange!
3. I didn't know you had ..... a big house.
4. I'm ..... tired that I think I'm going to bed.
5. It was ..... a slow train that it would have been faster to walk.
6. I've never met ..... kind people as your family.
7. I didn't expect it to be ..... cold – I wish I'd brought my coat.
8. It's been ..... terrible weather that the farmers haven't been able to grow anything.



"Let's get this straight, Simpson – after you had a bath, which plug did you pull out?"



**6** See how much of this story you can understand *without* using a dictionary. Then choose *only* five words to look up in the dictionary and read it again.

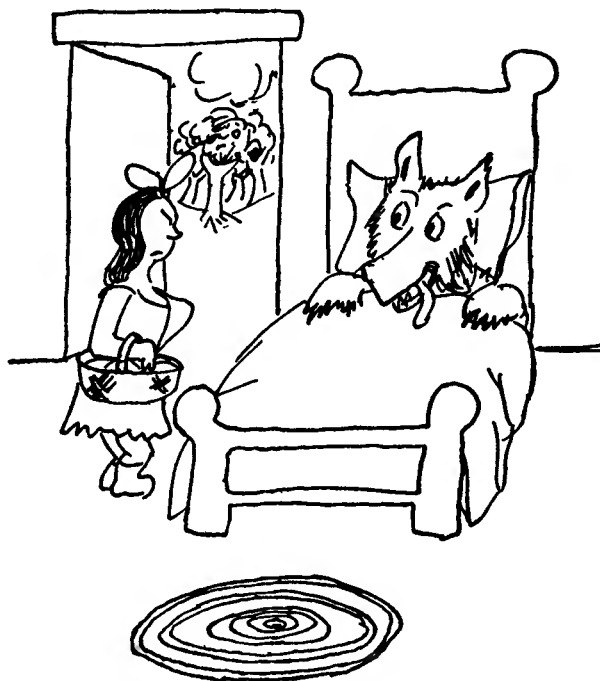
# THE LITTLE GIRL AND THE WOLF

One afternoon a big wolf waited in a dark forest for a little girl to come along carrying a basket of food to her grandmother. Finally a little girl did come along and she was carrying a basket of food. 'Are you carrying that basket to your grandmother?' asked the wolf. The little girl said yes, she was. So the wolf asked her where her grandmother lived and the little girl told him and he disappeared into the wood.

When the little girl opened the door of her grandmother's house she saw that there was somebody in bed with a nightcap and nightgown on. She had approached no nearer than twenty-five feet from the bed when she saw that it was not her grandmother but the wolf, for even in a nightcap a wolf does not look any more like your grandmother than the Metro-Goldwyn lion looks like the President of the United States. So the little girl took an automatic pistol out of her basket and shot the wolf dead.

*Moral: It is not so easy to fool little girls nowadays as it used to be.*

(from *The Thurber Carnival* - adapted)



## 32 I hadn't seen her for a long time

**1** Can you write the names of the cardinal and ordinal numbers?

1 one..... first.....

|    |    |       |
|----|----|-------|
| 1  | 11 | 21    |
| 2  | 12 | 30    |
| 3  | 13 | 100   |
| 4  | 14 | 1,000 |
| 5  | 15 |       |
| 6  | 16 |       |
| 7  | 17 |       |
| 8  | 18 |       |
| 9  | 19 |       |
| 10 | 20 |       |

**2** Can you pronounce these words with the right stress? Look in your dictionary or vocabulary index if you are not sure.

afternoon cinema difficult directions  
examine family goodbye language  
realise recognition repair reserve  
restaurant silence someone suitcase

**3** Can you complete the list?

January, February, . . .

Do you know the days of the week?

1. What is the day after Thursday?
2. What is the day before the day before Tuesday?
3. What is the day after the day before Sunday?
4. What is today?
5. What was the day before yesterday?
6. What is the day after tomorrow?
7. What day is your birthday on this year?

**4** If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 32, Exercise 2. Listen to the song and write down one or more verses.

**5** Read the text (use a dictionary for the most difficult words). Some of the words have been left out: you will find them in the box. Write the correct word for each blank.

and but had has have shall was were

## Crazy bank machine pays £195 jackpot

Police .....1..... last night investigating the mystery of a mad money machine which handed out a jackpot payment to a week-end shopper.

Brewery worker Mr David Baker tapped out a request for £15 on a National Westminster Bank cash dispenser at Kingston, Surrey, and .....2..... rewarded with about £195 in crisp fivers.

At their home in Kingston his wife, Mrs Deborah Baker, 30, said: 'He immediately handed the money over to the police. He .....3..... quite astonished.

'Some of the money obviously belonged to the lady who .....4..... used the machine before him. She .....5..... wanted £50 and got nothing.

'The machine .....6..... obviously gone up the wall. My husband handed over the £50 to the lady behind him, .....7..... he was still left with quite a lot of money.'

A spokesman for National Westminster said: 'Luckily there .....8..... a member of the staff nearby .....9..... the machine .....10..... switched off.

'I just do not know what made it go berserk. It is a normally reliable machine. We .....11..... make a thorough investigation.'

At Kingston police station a spokesman said: 'We have had a number of complaints about the machine. I sent a young special constable down to investigate but I .....12..... not heard from him for some time - perhaps he .....13..... gone to the South of France ...'

(Sunday Express)

**6** Imagine that you are David Baker. Write the story of what happened to you when you went to get money from the National Westminster Bank cash dispenser.

## 33 All right, I suppose so

**1** Complete the sentences with question tags.

1. You're not going to invite him, are you ?
2. She's very late, .....
3. He doesn't like pop music, .....
4. The meeting's on Tuesday, .....
5. You haven't got £5 on you, .....
6. We'll have to hurry, .....
7. You won't be late home tonight, .....
8. Ann was away yesterday, .....
9. She can't swim, .....
10. You like Bach, .....
11. Your mother isn't religious, .....
12. You'd like a drink, .....
13. John wasn't at the party, .....
14. You went to school in Scotland, .....
15. Mary doesn't know I'm here, .....

**2** What do these road signs tell you to do or not to do? Examples:

Sign A tells you to turn left.  
Sign B tells you not to park.



**3** Some of these words are stressed on the first syllable (like *carpet*), and some are stressed on the second syllable (like *invite*). Divide them into two groups, according to the stress, and then practise pronouncing them. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

about afraid afterwards already carpet difference directions  
everybody exactly forget happen invite language manager promise  
remember repair restaurant secretary silence somebody suppose

**4** Complete the dialogue with the words and expressions from the box.

|        |             |              |
|--------|-------------|--------------|
| afraid | been trying | been waiting |
| by     | for         | goes         |
| if     | me to       | month        |
| to     | urgent      | us to        |
|        | have to     | have to      |
|        | must        | must         |
|        | won't       | you to       |

MR L: Er, Miss Collins.  
 MISS C: Yes, Mr Lewis?  
 MR L: I'd like .....1..... do a couple of letters for me, .....2..... you don't mind.  
 MISS C: Well, er, Mr Martin has just asked .....3..... do a letter for him. He says it's .....4.....  
 MR L: Well, I'm .....5..... he'll .....6..... wait. I've .....7..... to get these letters written all week, and they .....8..... go today. I .....9..... keep you long.  
 MISS C: Right, Mr Lewis.  
 MR L: This letter is .....10..... John Barlow, at Barlow and Fletcher, in Manchester.

'Dear Mr Barlow

Thank you for your letter of April 14, in which you ask .....11..... wait a further six weeks for delivery of our order. I am afraid that this is out of the question. We have already .....12..... eight weeks .....13..... these urgently needed parts, and we .....14..... have them by the end of the .....15..... If they do not arrive .....16..... April 30, I regret to say that we shall .....17..... cancel the order and look elsewhere.

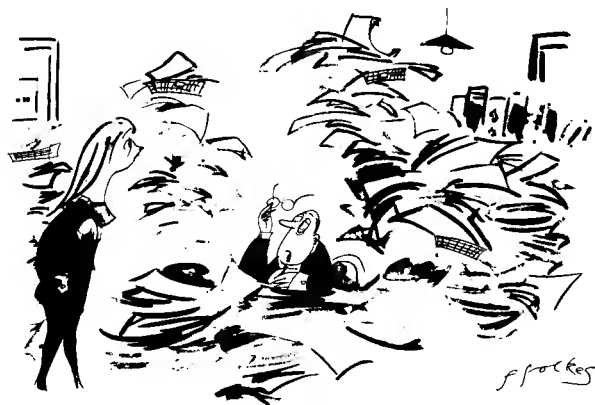
Yours sincerely

Paul Lewis.'

See that this .....18..... today, Miss Collins, would you?

MISS C: Yes, of course, Mr Lewis.

MR L: And now a letter to . . .



"I must warn you, Miss Pringle, there's an awful lot of paperwork."

**5** If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 33, Exercise 1. Listen and imitate the pronunciation. Pay special attention to intonation (the musical rise and fall of the voice).

**6** Read this with a dictionary. Can you write some misleading advice for foreign visitors to your country?

### Misleading advice for foreigners

[The *New Statesman* magazine set a competition in which readers were asked to give misleading advice to tourists visiting England for the first time. These are some of the entries.]

Women are not allowed upstairs on buses; if you see a woman there, ask her politely to descend.

Visitors in London hotels are expected by the management to hang the bedlinen out of the windows to air.

Try the famous echo in the British Museum Reading Room.

On first entering an underground train, it is customary to shake hands with every passenger.

If you take a taxi, the driver will be only too willing to give your shoes a polish while waiting at the traffic-lights.

Never attempt to tip a taxi-driver.

Public conveniences are few; unfrequented streets where relief is permitted are marked 'P'.

Parking is permitted in the grounds of Buckingham Palace on payment of a small fee to the sentry.

Never pay the price demanded for a newspaper; good-natured haggling is customary.

*public conveniences*: public lavatories

*unfrequented*: deserted

*sentry*: soldier on guard

*haggling*: arguing about the price



"Remember me from last night?"

# 34 If he had been bad at maths, . . .

## 1 Write a past conditional sentence for each situation.

1. Yesterday began as a terrible day for Chris. He didn't hear the alarm clock, so he got up late.  
*If he had heard the alarm clock, he would have got up on time.*
2. He usually reads the paper in the morning, but he didn't yesterday.  
*He would have read the paper if he hadn't got up late.*
3. He was really late, so he decided to drive instead of taking the bus.
4. He was worried about being late, and he didn't close the house door properly.
5. He saw it was open, and got out of the car to close it.
6. In his hurry, he locked the car with the keys inside.
7. He ran back into the house to get the other car keys, and knocked a jar of jam all over the kitchen.
8. The main road to his office was closed for repairs – it had been in the paper that morning, but he hadn't read the paper.
9. When he finally got to work, he was really late, and there were no more places in his office car park.
10. He spent twenty minutes looking for a parking place. He should have taken the bus!
11. His boss thought he was ill and gave some of his work to his colleague Janice.
12. When he walked into the office, the boss gave him a new project, working with a firm of architects.
13. He was surprised to find out that the receptionist at the architects' was an old school friend that he hadn't seen for years; he was delighted that the boss hadn't given the job to someone else.
14. The boss said she had meant to give the project to Janice, but gave it to Chris because Janice had already started on his old project.

**3** *The woman's arm wouldn't have been burnt if the car hadn't crashed. Make some more sentences about what wouldn't have happened.*

## 4 Pronunciation. Say these sentences with the right stress.

1. If she'd been bad at languages, she would have studied maths.
2. She'd have become a teacher if she'd studied maths.
3. If she hadn't decided to become an interpreter, she'd have gone to teacher training college.
4. If she'd gone to teacher training college, she would have met Alice there.
5. She wouldn't have met Andrew if she'd gone to teacher training college.
6. If she hadn't met Andrew, she wouldn't have gone to Crete.

## 2 Put a word from the box into each blank in the text. You can use your dictionary.

|       |        |       |     |        |        |      |         |
|-------|--------|-------|-----|--------|--------|------|---------|
| adopt | animal | angry | arm | car    | fish   | fish | injured |
| local | lost   | love  | oil | phoned | police | put  | turn    |

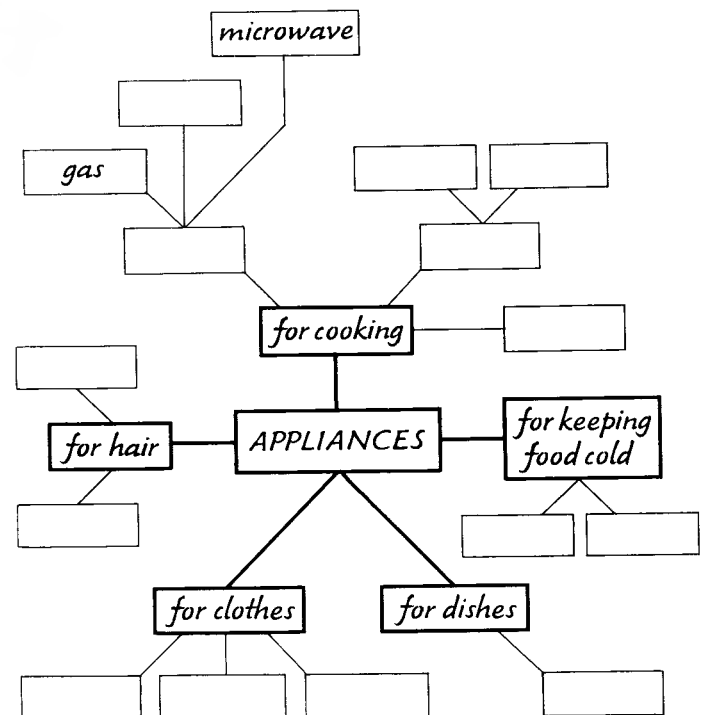
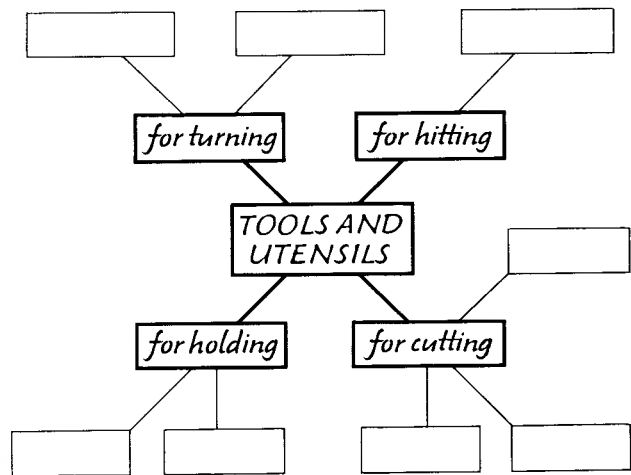
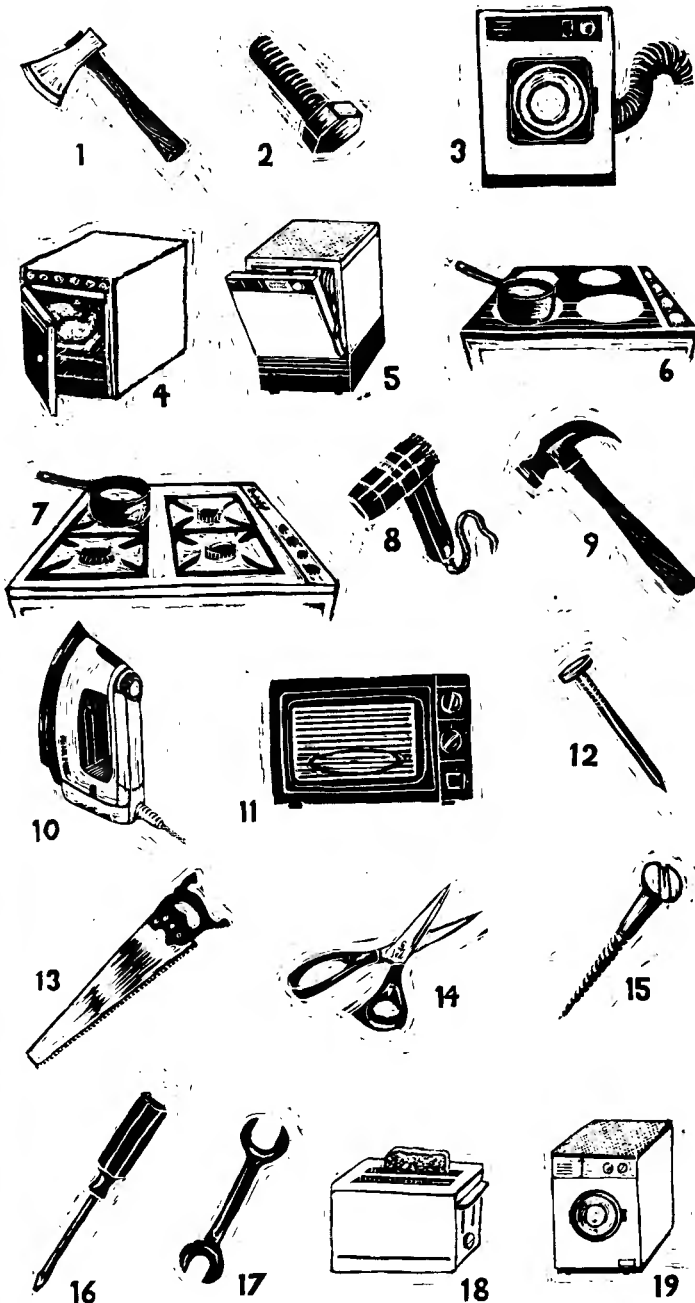
### Expensive kindness

A West German woman's .....1..... for cats has brought her an .....2..... cat and a bill for £23,000. The story, told by German .....3....., began when the 56-year-old woman from Wuppertal .....4..... her cat and .....5..... an advertisement in the .....6..... paper. A man .....7..... her to say he had found the .....8....., but in fact it was not hers. However, she felt sorry for the cat, which must have been a stray, and decided to .....9..... it. On the way home in her Mercedes .....10....., the cat 'suddenly went wild' and bit and scratched her .....11..... This caused the car to .....12..... off the road and crash into a parked car, bringing down a sausage stand and a neighbouring .....13..... and chip stand. Boiling .....14..... burnt the arms of a 44-year-old woman selling .....15..... and chips, and a 21-year-old woman who was waiting for her chips fainted and .....16..... herself falling to the pavement.

(adapted from an article by Anna Tomforde in the *Guardian*)



**5** Vocabulary revision and extension. Label the pictures; you can use a dictionary. Then complete the vocabulary networks (you will not use all the words).



**6** Write the story of your life in 100 words or so. Then write four sentences about it using 'If ... had(n't) ... , ...'

## 35 Travel

**1** You can go to a travel agent's to make enquiries about a holiday, to buy an air ticket to New York, because you want to make a reservation on a train, and for lots of other reasons. You can go to a petrol station to buy petrol, to have the oil checked, because the petrol pump attendant is a friend of yours, etc. Why did you last go to the following places (answer with *To ...* or *Because ...*):

a petrol station; a travel agent's; an airport; a bus stop; a garage;  
a station enquiry office; a police station; a post office; a bank.



## 2 Put in the right 'question tags'.

1. It's a nice day, isn't it ? .....
2. You look very like your father, .....
3. You aren't tired, .....
4. Mary doesn't drink wine, .....
5. Your mother speaks Chinese, .....
6. The garden's looking nice, .....
7. People are all different, .....
8. You've got a cold, .....
9. He doesn't drive very well, .....
10. You want to speak to the manager, .....

**3** Put in *anybody, somebody, nobody, everybody, anything, something, nothing* or *everything*.

1. I think there's ..... at the door.
2. I'm sorry – I haven't got ..... for you to drink.
3. I think you know ..... who's here, don't you?
4. ....'s worrying me – can I talk to you about it?
5. .... really knows what goes on inside children's heads.
6. Has ..... seen Janet today?
7. She had her bag stolen in London: she lost her passport, her money, her air ticket – .....
8. 'Would you like a sandwich?' 'No, ..... to eat, thank you.'

**4** If you have Student's Cassette B, find Lesson 35, Exercise 2. Choose three or more of the pieces of conversation and try to write down the words.



*"What about my exhaust, officer?"*

**5** Imagine you are standing outside the main post office in a city or town in your country. Somebody asks you the way to a bank, or a railway station, or a museum, or somewhere else (you decide exactly where). Write what you will say to him or her.

**6** *Strange but true!* Read this with a dictionary.

The scientist Thomas Young could read when he was two years old, and had read the Bible twice when he was four. He learnt twelve languages as a child, and could play a large number of musical instruments.

By the age of thirteen, the French linguist Champollion had learnt Latin, Greek, Hebrew, Arabic, Syrian, Chaldean and Coptic. When he was 21 he solved the mystery of ancient Egyptian hieroglyphic writing.

Sir John Bowring (1792–1872) was said to be able to read 200 languages and speak 100. The New Zealander Dr Harold Whitmore Williams could communicate in 52 languages, and was fluent in 28.

500 years ago Leonardo de Vinci produced designs for a parachute, a life jacket, a water pump, a paddle boat, a steam gun, a lens-grinding machine, a machine gun, a helicopter, a submarine, and a number of other modern inventions. He was also one of the greatest artists that has ever lived.

The American chess master Morphy once played eight games of chess simultaneously while blindfolded. (He won six of the games.)

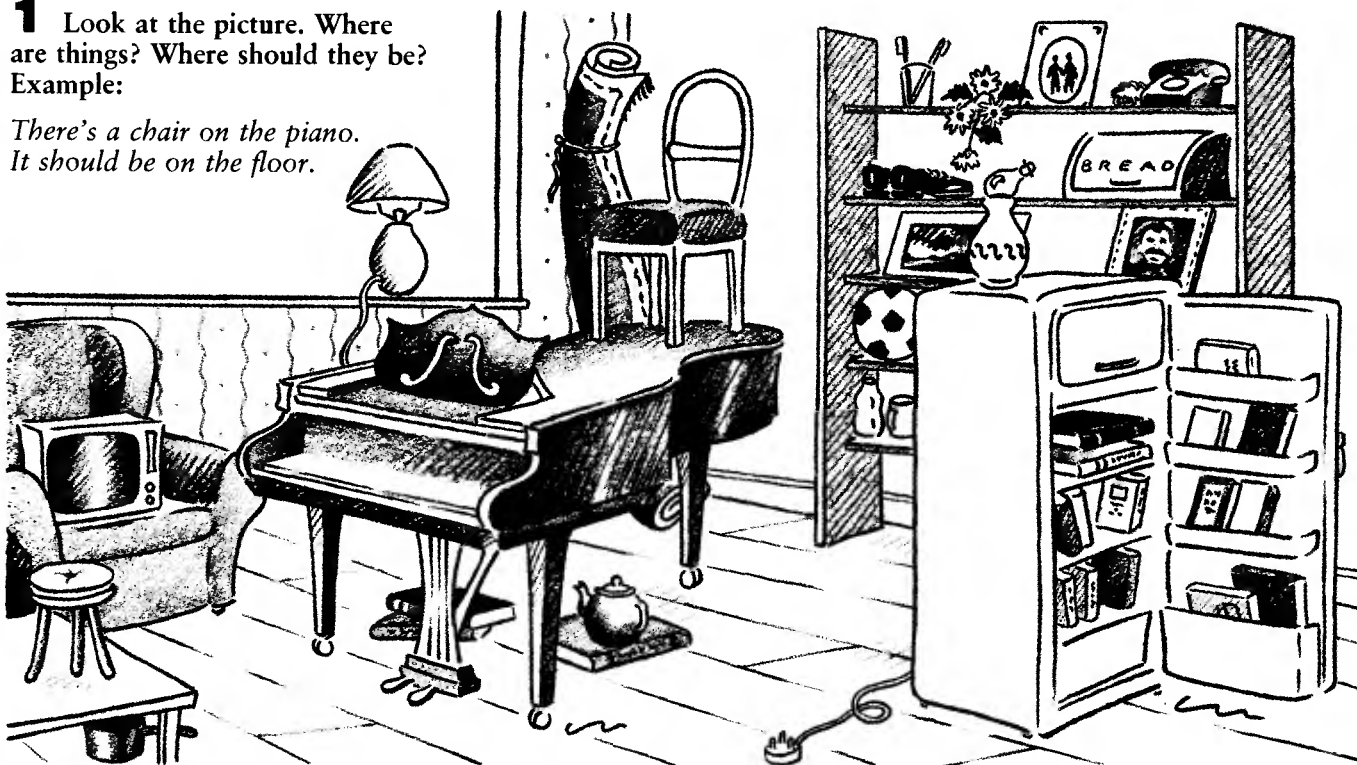


"George, is there a mountain near here?"

# 36 Shall I open it for you?

**1** Look at the picture. Where are things? Where should they be?  
Example:

*There's a chair on the piano.  
It should be on the floor.*



**2** Put in prepositions or adverb particles from the box.

|     |        |      |      |     |    |     |
|-----|--------|------|------|-----|----|-----|
| at  | away   | back | down | for | on | off |
| out | out of | to   | up   |     |    |     |

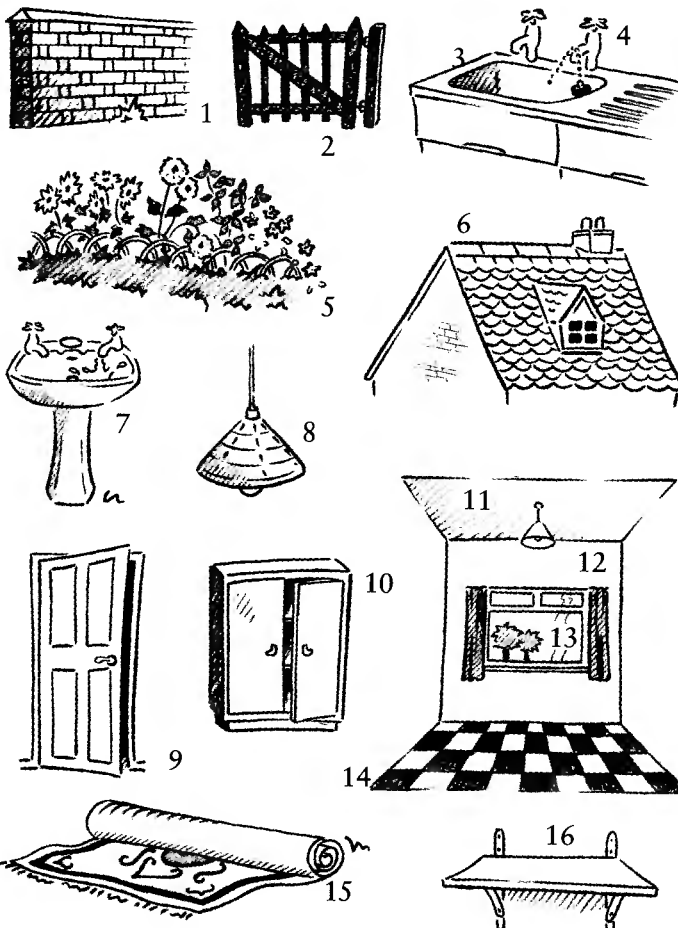
1. Look ..... my new shoes!
2. I've lost my keys. Can you help me look ..... them?
3. It's getting dark. Shall I switch ..... the light?
4. Would you like to take ..... your coat and sit .....?
5. Let's listen ..... some music.
6. Could you pick ..... the children's shoes and put them .....?
7. This meat's bad. I'll have to take it .....
8. Tell Ann to put ..... her coat before she goes .....
9. 'What's the weather like?' 'Why don't you look ..... the window?'
10. 'Here's your shopping.' 'Thanks - just put it ..... over there.'

**3** Complete the table.

| WHO? | WHO(M)? | WHOSE? | WHOSE? | —      |
|------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| I    | me      | my     | mine   | myself |
| you  | .....   | .....  | .....  | .....  |
| he   | him     | .....  | .....  | .....  |
| she  | .....   | .....  | .....  | .....  |
| it   | .....   | its    | —      | itself |
| we   | .....   | .....  | .....  | .....  |
| you  | .....   | .....  | .....  | .....  |
| they | .....   | .....  | .....  | .....  |

**4** Vocabulary revision and extension. Match the words and the numbers.

|        |         |           |        |       |
|--------|---------|-----------|--------|-------|
| carpet | ceiling | cupboard  | door   | floor |
| garden | gate    | light     | roof   | shelf |
| tap    | wall    | washbasin | window |       |



## 5 Practise saying these words with the correct stress.

afterwards    along    careful    crossroads  
everybody    exactly    finally    forget  
handbag    invite    manager    midnight  
permission    promise    railway    remember  
secretary    suppose

**6** Imagine an English friend is coming to visit you in your home. Write a letter, giving precise instructions on how to drive to your home from the main road into your city/town/village.



"I am standing under your foot."

## Summary F

### 1 Make questions.

1. Gloria gets up very early. (*What time . . . ?*)
2. The church was built by Wren. (*When . . . ?*)
3. I'm waiting. (*What . . . for?*)
4. He was sacked last week. (*Why . . . ?*)
5. We're going on holiday in June. (*Where . . . ?*)
6. I don't usually sit here. (*Where . . . ?*)
7. He never travels by car. (*How . . . ?*)
8. My father was killed when I was six. (*How . . . ?*)

### 2 Put in words from the box.

|         |       |         |          |        |
|---------|-------|---------|----------|--------|
| already | back  | believe | boss     | months |
| must    | news  | nice    | remember | same   |
| see     | still | work    | yet      |        |

'Hello, Pam. Any .....<sup>1</sup>..... of Jane?'  
'Well, she's .....<sup>2</sup>..... from holiday.'  
'Yes, I know. I was going to phone her but I haven't had time .....<sup>3</sup>.....'  
'You know, she's .....<sup>4</sup>..... in love with that student.'  
'What, the .....<sup>5</sup>..... one that she was in love with last month? Hasn't she got tired of him .....<sup>6</sup>.....?'  
'That's not a very .....<sup>7</sup>..... thing to say, Mary.'  
'Well, she's .....<sup>8</sup>..... been in love three times this year to my certain knowledge, and it's only March.'  
'Jane's a warm-hearted girl.'  
'You can say that again, Pam. How's her .....<sup>9</sup>..... going? Is she .....<sup>10</sup>..... with Universal Sprockets?'  
'Yes, .....<sup>11</sup>..... there. That makes two .....<sup>12</sup>..... now.'  
'That .....<sup>13</sup>..... be a record. How's she doing?'  
'Pretty well. They've .....<sup>14</sup>..... given her a rise.'  
'I don't .....<sup>15</sup>..... it. She can't spell, she can't type, she can't .....<sup>16</sup>..... her own name half the time.'  
'I think the .....<sup>17</sup>..... fancies her.'  
'That .....<sup>18</sup>..... be it. OK, Pam, I've got to go. I'll probably drop in at the weekend, OK?'  
'OK, Mary. ....<sup>19</sup>..... you then. Bye.'  
'Bye.'

### 3 Make sentences with the Present Perfect Progressive tense.

1. How long | you | wait?  
*How long have you been waiting?*
2. I | try | to phone him all day.
3. We | live | in this house for about twelve years.
4. Janet | practise | the violin all afternoon.
5. I | wait | for a letter from my father for weeks.
6. How long | you | learn | English?
7. People | fight | each other for millions of years.
8. They | talk | for a long time.
9. It | rain | since I got up this morning.

### 4 Translate these into your language.

1. I hadn't seen her since the day we said goodbye.
2. When I got back to the table she had gone.
3. If his parents had been well off, he would have gone to university.
4. 'You're French, aren't you?' 'No, I'm Swiss.'
5. He asked her if he could have a party.
6. She told him to tidy up afterwards.
7. Would you like me to switch the lights on?
8. John's still in bed. He hasn't woken up yet.
9. Susan is already dressed.
10. 'Shall I open it for you?' 'No, thanks. I can do it myself.'
11. I'll answer the door, shall I?
12. 'Would you like to dance?' 'I'd love to.'

**5**

|       |            |        |         |      |      |       |      |
|-------|------------|--------|---------|------|------|-------|------|
| after | after that | before | finally | next | then | until | when |
|-------|------------|--------|---------|------|------|-------|------|



6



DAEGIN



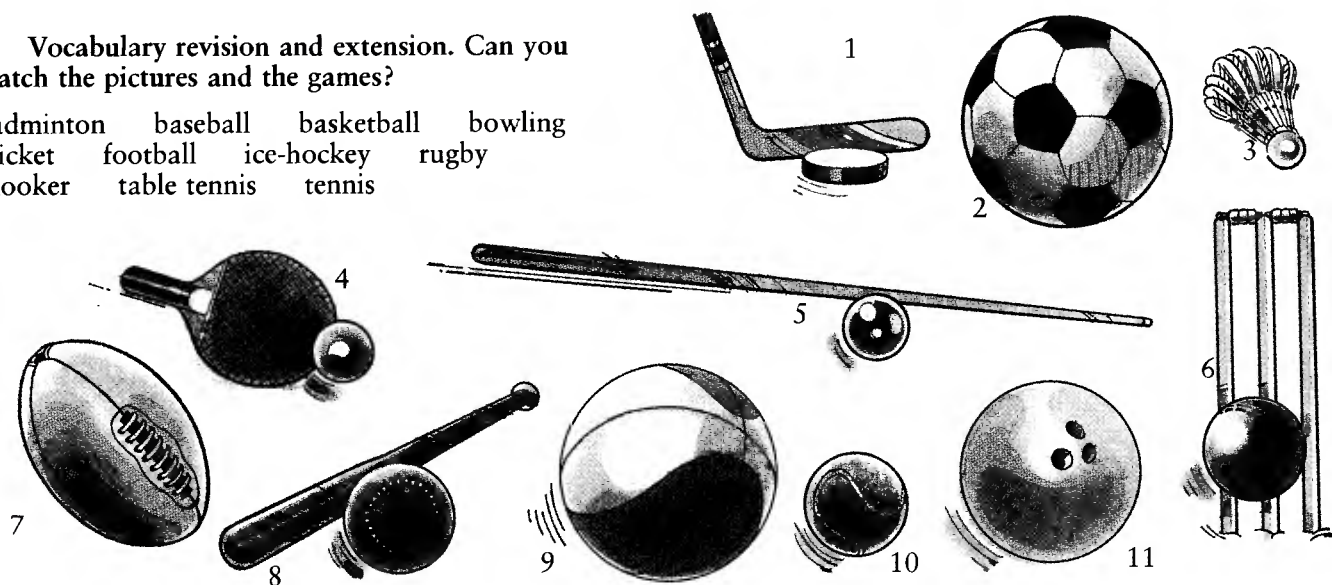
WSch!!!



# Revision F

**1** Vocabulary revision and extension. Can you match the pictures and the games?

badminton    baseball    basketball    bowling  
cricket    football    ice-hockey    rugby  
snooker    table tennis    tennis



**2** Put in *there is/are, there was/were, there has/have been, there will be* or *there would be*.

1. Do you think ..... people on other planets?
2. I don't think ..... ever ..... so many people unemployed.
3. .... sunshine in most parts of the country tomorrow.
4. When I got to Anne's place ..... two police cars outside.
5. I don't believe that ..... life after death.
6. .... a phone call for you last night.
7. Hello. Is that the police? ..... an accident in Station Road.
8. If people behaved sensibly, ..... no more wars.

**3** Write suitable answers to these offers.

1. Shall I make some coffee?
2. Would you like to go and see a film?
3. Would you like to dance?
4. Can I take your coat?
5. Would you like me to put the lights on?
6. I'll close the door, shall I?

**4** If you have Student's Cassette B, find Revision Lesson F, Listening Exercise 2. Listen to the song and write down the verbs. Check on Student's Book page 125.

**5** Read this with a dictionary.

## SEAGULL

What does a seagull  
know about being a seagull?  
What does it feel  
as it hangs above the cliff edge  
adjusting its wings to the wind,  
turning its bright yellow eye  
this way and that?

Watching it hover  
then fall away sideways  
and, gathering speed,  
glide so effortlessly down  
to a gleaming wet rock,  
we are moved by its movement.  
We feel it like music.

But what of the seagull?

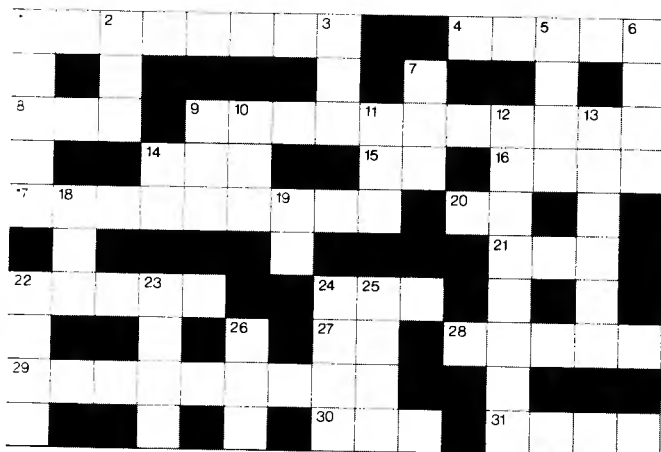
(Bob Rogers)



"Just think, I'd have been an old man  
by now if I'd ever grown up."



# 6 Try the crossword.

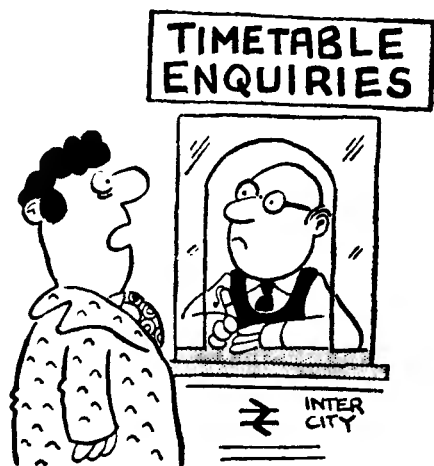


## ACROSS

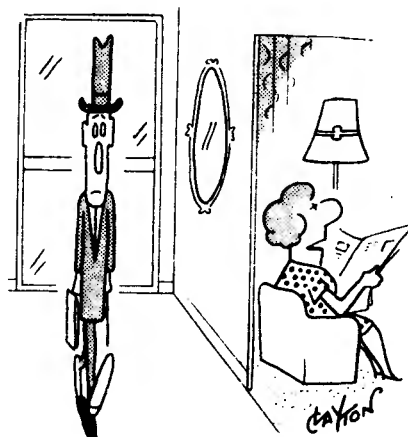
1. You put a letter in it.
4. Have you got some ..... for cleaning windows?
8. I usually ..... up at 6.30.
9. I usually wait until my hair is too long before I go to the .....
14. You can use this for frying.
15. I am.
16. The opposite of *false*.
17. Can you ..... this letter into French for me?
20. Would you prefer tea ..... coffee?
21. I first met her ten years .....
22. And we're ..... friends after all this time.
24. He's been looking for a ..... since he left school, and he still hasn't found one.
27. Could you pick ..... those bits of paper?
28. 'Good music.' 'I don't ..... I think it's terrible.'
29. You can fly in this.
30. The opposite of *beginning*.
31. Elephants eat grass and leaves, don't .....

## DOWN

1. Four twos.
2. Value Added Tax (*abbreviation*).
3. You use this to hear with.
5. Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (*abbreviation*).
6. Money you pay to travel.
7. Between your wrist and your shoulder.
9. Not hers.
10. Not ..... birds can fly.
11. The last thing you will do.
12. Keep ..... on until you get to a crossroads and then turn right.
13. France and Poland are in ....., but Nigeria and Japan are not.
14. 'Shall I take your coat?' 'No thanks, I'll keep it .....
18. Like a mouse, but bigger.
19. I'll tell you as soon ..... possible.
22. Stuff to wash with.
23. If you don't know a word, you can ..... it up in a dictionary.
24. The month before the month after the month before July.
25. Shall I ..... the door for you?
26. You can do this in 29 *across*.



"About what time does the 9.20 leave?"



"Was the train very crowded, dear?"

# Mini-grammar

## Special verbs

*Be*  
*There is*  
*Have (got)*  
*Have and be*

## Ordinary verbs

Simple Present  
Present Progressive  
The difference between the two present tenses  
Telling stories with present tenses  
Regular and irregular past tenses and past participles  
Simple Past  
Past Progressive  
Simple Present Perfect  
Present Perfect Progressive (including *for* and *since*)  
The difference between the Present Perfect and the Simple Past  
The difference between the Present Perfect and the Present  
Past Perfect

## Talking about the future

Present Progressive  
*Be going* + infinitive  
*Will*  
The differences

## Passives

Simple Present Passive  
Simple Past Passive

## Imperatives, infinitives and -ing forms

Imperatives  
Infinitives with *to*  
Infinitives without *to*  
-ing forms

## Modal verbs

The grammar of modal verbs  
Meaning and use

## Nouns and articles

Plurals of nouns  
Articles  
Countable and uncountable nouns

## Pronouns, determiners and question words

Subject and object pronouns  
Possessives  
Reflexives, *each other* and *else*  
*This, that, these* and *those*  
*Some, any* and *no*  
Quantifiers with uncountables and plurals  
Other determiners  
Question words

## Adjectives

Position of adjectives  
Comparative and superlative adjectives  
Using comparatives and superlatives  
Comparisons with *as*

## Adverbs

79 Adjectives and adverbs 96  
79 Spelling of -ly adverbs 96  
80 Position of adverbs 97  
81 Frequency adverbs 97  
Adverbs of degree 97  
Comparative and superlative adverbs 97

## Prepositions

81 Talking about time 98  
82 Talking about place 98  
82 Other uses of prepositions 98

## Putting things together

83 *And; but; both . . . and; neither . . . nor* 99  
84 *Because* 99  
84 Conjunctions of time 99  
85 *If* 99  
85 Reported speech 100  
85 Relative clauses 100  
85 Joining sentences 100  
86 Position of prepositions and adverb particles 100

## Problems with some words

86 Verbs with two objects 101  
86 *Lend* and *borrow* 101  
86 *Like* and *would like* 101  
86 *Like* + object + infinitive 101  
86 *Get* 101  
*Be like, look like* and *look* 101  
*Born* 101  
*Agree* 102  
87 *Still, yet* and *already* 102  
*Such* and *so* 102

## Conversational grammar

87 Leaving out subjects 102  
88 Auxiliary verbs without main verbs (short answers, reply questions, tags, *So am I* etc.) 102

## Doing things in English

88 Meeting and greeting 103  
89 Asking for personal information 103  
Opinions, likes and dislikes 103  
Apologising 103  
Inviting and answering invitations 103  
Making suggestions 103  
90 Discussion: opinions and advice 104  
90 Asking for and giving permission 104  
91 Asking for things; asking for help; borrowing and lending 104  
92 Offers and replies 104  
92 Telling people to do things 104  
93 Restaurants: ordering and asking 104  
93 Shopping 104  
94 Asking for things when you don't know the words 105  
94 Asking for and giving directions 105  
Talking about feeling ill 105  
Telephoning 105  
Describing 105  
95 Probability and certainty 105  
95 Talking about ages, heights and weights 105  
96 Formal and informal language 105  
Asking about English 106  
Dates 106  
Writing formal letters 106

# Special verbs: *be* and *have* (got)

## Be

| Present tense                                                                                                                                |                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I am (I'm)<br>you are (you're)<br>he is (he's)<br>she is (she's)<br>it is (it's)<br>we are (we're)<br>you are (you're)<br>they are (they're) | am I?<br>are you?<br>is he?<br>is she?<br>is it?<br>are we?<br>are you?<br>are they? | I am not (I'm not)<br>you are not (you're not / you aren't)<br>he is not (he's not / he isn't)<br>she is not (she's not / she isn't)<br>it is not (it's not / it isn't)<br>we are not (we're not / we aren't)<br>you are not (you're not / you aren't)<br>they are not (they're not / they aren't) |

I'm from India.

I'm sixteen. (~~I have sixteen.~~)

'Are you English?' 'Yes, I am.' (~~'Yes, I'm.'~~)

Her name's Ann.

'Is Susan an engineer?' 'Yes, she is.' (~~'Yes, she's.'~~)

Are your brothers at school? (~~Are at school your brothers?~~)

| Past tense                                                             |                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I was<br>you were<br>he/she/it was<br>we were<br>you were<br>they were | was I?<br>were you?<br>was she <i>etc.</i> ?<br>were we?<br>were you?<br>were they? | I was not (wasn't)<br>you were not (weren't)<br>he <i>etc.</i> was not (wasn't)<br>we were not (weren't)<br>you were not (weren't)<br>they were not (weren't) |

'When you were a small child, were you happy?'

'Yes, I was.' 'No, I wasn't.'

Were your parents poor? (~~Were poor your parents?~~)

We weren't poor, but we weren't rich.

## Stress and pronunciation

I was /wəz/ hungry. Yes, I was /wɒz/.

I wasn't /wɒznt/ happy.

We were /wə/ poor. Yes, we were /wɜ:/.

We weren't /wɜ:nt/ happy.

## Present Perfect and Future

I **have been** ill for the last few weeks.

Where **has** John **been** all day?

Tomorrow **will be** cold and wet.

I'll **be** back home about six o'clock.

## There is

| Present and past tenses         |                           |                                                    |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| there is (there's)<br>there are | is there?<br>are there?   | there is not (isn't)<br>there are not (aren't)     |
| there was<br>there were         | was there?<br>were there? | there was not (wasn't)<br>there were not (weren't) |

## Stress and pronunciation

There's a **big** table in my **kitchen**. (/ðəzə/)

Is there any **milk** in the **fridge**? (/ɪz ðər 'eni/)

Yes, there **is**. (/ðər 'ɪz/)

No, there **isn't**. (/ðər 'ɪznt/)

There **are** some **apples**. (/ðər ə səm/)

Are there any **oranges**? (/ 'ɑ: ðər 'eni/)

Yes, there **are**. (/ðər 'ɑ:/)

No, there **aren't**. (/ðər 'ɑ:nt/)

There **was** some **coffee** on the **table**. (/ðə wəz səm/)

There **wasn't** any **ice** in her **glass**. (/ðə 'wɒznt/)

There **weren't** any **potatoes**. (/ðə 'wɜ:nt/)

## Present Perfect and Future

There **has been** an accident.

Have there **been** any phone calls for me?

There **will be** snow at the weekend.

There **won't be** a meeting tomorrow.

## Have (got)

*Have got* (possession, relationships, etc.)

| Present tense                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I have (I've) got<br>you have (you've) got<br>he <i>etc.</i> has (he's) got<br>we have (we've) got<br>you have (you've) got<br>they have (they've) got | have I got?<br>have you got?<br>has she <i>etc.</i> got?<br>have we got?<br>have you got?<br>have they got? | I have not (haven't) got<br>you have not (haven't) got<br>he <i>etc.</i> has not (hasn't) got<br>we have not (haven't) got<br>you have not (haven't) got<br>they have not (haven't) got |

You've got beautiful eyes.

'Have you got any sisters or brothers?'

'Yes, I have. I've got two sisters.' 'No, I haven't.'

'Has your mother got any sisters?' ('Has got your mother any sisters?')

'Yes, she has. She's got two.' 'No, she hasn't.'

We've got a new car.

They haven't got any money.

1. *Have got* means the same as *have*; we use them both to talk about possession and relationships. British people prefer *have got* when they speak and write informally. Americans more often use *have* without *got*.
2. With *had*, we do not use *got* so often. We often use *did* to make past questions and negatives (see below).
3. *Have* can also mean *eat*, *take*, etc. (see below). With these meanings, we do not use *got*, and we use *do* to make questions and negatives.
4. We also use *have* to make the perfect tenses of other verbs (see below). We do not use *got* or *do* in this case.

*Have* (= *eat*, *take*, etc.)

| Present tense                                                           |                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I have<br>you have<br>he/she/it has<br>we have<br>you have<br>they have | do I have?<br>do you have?<br>does he/she/it have?<br>do we have?<br>do you have?<br>do they have? | I do not (don't) have<br>you do not (don't) have<br>he/she/it does not (doesn't) have<br>we do not (don't) have<br>you do not (don't) have<br>they do not (don't) have |

What time do you have breakfast?

She always has a bath in the morning.

Have a good holiday.

The past of *have got* and *have*

|                                                                    |                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I had<br>you had<br>he/she/it had<br>we had<br>you had<br>they had | did I have?<br>did you have?<br>did he/she/it have?<br>did we have?<br>did you have?<br>did they have? | I did not (didn't) have<br>you did not (didn't) have<br>he/she/it did not (didn't) have<br>we did not (didn't) have<br>you did not (didn't) have<br>they did not (didn't) have |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

When she was young she had long fair hair.

We didn't have a car when I was a child.

We had a wonderful holiday last summer.

What time did you have breakfast this morning?

Present Perfect and Future

I have had a lot of problems this year.

How long have you had that car?

I think I'll have a bath now.

I don't know if we will have time to see your mother.

## Have and be

We use *be*, not *have*, with *hungry*, *thirsty*, *hot*, *warm* and *cold*; and to talk about age, size and colour.

I'm hungry. (~~I have hungry.~~)

Are you thirsty? (~~Have you ...?~~)

If you're cold, put a sweater on.

He's 27. (~~He has 27.~~)

What size are your shoes?

What colour is her new car?

## Ordinary verbs: present tenses

### Simple Present

|                                                                                  |                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I work<br>you work<br>he/she/it <u>works</u><br>we work<br>you work<br>they work | do I work?<br>do you work?<br><u>does</u> he <i>etc.</i> work?<br>do we work?<br>do you work?<br>do they work? | I do not (don't) work<br>you do not (don't) work<br>she <i>etc.</i> <u>does</u> not ( <u>doesn't</u> ) work<br>we do not (don't) work<br>you do not (don't) work<br>they do not (don't) work |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

I live in Curzon Street.

'Do you like orange juice?' 'Yes, I do.' ('Yes, I like.')

What time does Karen get up?

(~~... does Karen gets ...~~)

'Does she go to work by car?' 'No, she doesn't.'

My father doesn't work on Mondays.

(~~... doesn't works ...~~)

'Do Sam and Virginia live near you?' 'No, they don't.'

### Stress and pronunciation

'Do you (/dju:/) like orange juice?'

'Yes, I do.' 'No, I don't.'

What time does (/dəz/) Karen get up?

'Does (/dəz/) she have breakfast?'

'Yes, she does (/dəz/).' 'No, she doesn't (/ˈdʌznt/).'

### Spelling of *he/she/it* forms

|                                        |                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MOST VERBS:</b>                     | get → gets<br>play → plays<br>live → lives        |
| <b>VERBS ENDING IN CONSONANT + -y:</b> | try → tries<br>study → studies                    |
| <b>VERBS ENDING IN -ch, -sh OR -s:</b> | watch → watches<br>wash → washes<br>miss → misses |
| <b>IRREGULAR:</b>                      | have → has<br>do → does<br>go → goes              |

### Pronunciation of *he/she/it* forms

1. /z/ after vowels and most voiced sounds (/b/, /d/, /g/, /v/, /ð/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/)

goes /gəʊz/ sees /si:z/ stands /stændz/  
lives /lɪvz/ tells /telz/ runs /rʌnz/

2. /s/ after most unvoiced sounds (/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, /θ/)

stops /stɒps/ starts /stɑ:tɪs/ looks /lʊks/

3. /ɪz/ after /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

presses /ˈpresɪz/ uses /ˈju:zɪz/ pushes /ˈpʊʃɪz/  
watches /ˈwɒtʃɪz/



## Present Progressive

|                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I am (I'm) looking<br>you are (you're) looking<br>he/she/it is (he's <i>etc.</i> ) looking<br>we are (we're) looking<br>you are (you're) looking<br>they are (they're) looking | am I looking?<br>are you looking?<br>is she <i>etc.</i> looking?<br>are we looking?<br>are you looking?<br>are they looking? | I am not (I'm not) looking<br>you are not (you're not / you aren't) looking<br>he <i>etc.</i> is not (he's not / he isn't) looking<br>we are not (we're not / we aren't) looking<br>you are not (you're not / you aren't) looking<br>they are not (they're not / they aren't) looking |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

I'm looking for a blue sweater.

Everybody is looking up. (~~Everybody are ...~~)

They are wearing green suits.

'Is the commentator looking?' (~~'Is looking the commentator?'~~)

'Yes, he is.' 'No, he isn't.'

What is the woman in the red dress doing? (~~What is doing the woman ...~~)

I'm not working today.

The price of bread is going up.

People are getting taller.

What are you doing tomorrow?

### Non-progressive verbs

With some verbs (for example *know, want, like, remember, have* meaning 'possess', *be*), we usually use simple tenses, not progressive tenses.

I know who she is. (~~I am knowing ...~~)

Do you want to go home now? (~~Are you wanting ...?~~)

I don't like this music. (~~I'm not liking ...~~)

She has (got) a headache. (~~She is having ...~~)

### Spelling of -ing forms

#### MOST VERBS:

work → working  
eat → eating

#### VERBS ENDING IN -e:

make → making (~~makeing~~)  
write → writing

#### SHORT VERBS ENDING IN ONE VOWEL + ONE CONSONANT:

stop → stopping  
sit → sitting  
run → running

#### VERBS ENDING IN -ie:

lie → lying  
die → dying

## The difference between the two present tenses

### 1. We use the Simple Present to talk about:

- things that are true all the time

The earth goes round the sun.  
Water boils at 100° Celsius.  
I speak French.

- things that happen often, usually, sometimes *etc.*

I usually study from five to seven o'clock.  
Helen often wears red.

### 2. We use the Present Progressive to talk about:

- things that are happening or changing now, these days

The water's boiling. I'll make coffee.  
I'm studying very hard just now.  
Look. Helen's wearing a lovely red dress.  
The price of bread is going up.  
People are getting taller.

- plans for the future (see below, page 86)

We're going to Ann and Peter's for Christmas.  
What are you doing tomorrow?

## Telling stories with present tenses

One day, Anna is walking in the park when a man stops her. It is Boris. He tells her . . .

# Ordinary verbs: past and perfect tenses

## Regular and irregular past tenses and past participles

| INFINITIVE             | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| <i>Regular verbs</i>   |            |                 |
| work                   | worked     | worked          |
| play                   | played     | played          |
| live                   | lived      | lived           |
| stop                   | stopped    | stopped         |
| try                    | tried      | tried           |
| etc.                   |            |                 |
| <i>Irregular verbs</i> |            |                 |
| be                     | was/were   | been            |
| come                   | came       | come            |
| go                     | went       | been/gone       |
| know                   | knew       | known           |
| learn                  | learnt     | learnt          |
| see                    | saw        | seen            |
| etc.                   |            |                 |

(For a complete list of irregular verbs in *The New Cambridge English Course* Levels 1 and 2, see Student's Book 2 page 128.)

## Simple Past

|                   |                           |                                      |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I stopped         | did I stop?               | I did not (didn't) stop              |
| you stopped       | did you stop?             | you did not (didn't) stop            |
| he/she/it stopped | did she <i>etc.</i> stop? | he <i>etc.</i> did not (didn't) stop |
| we stopped        | did we stop?              | we did not (didn't) stop             |
| you stopped       | did you stop?             | you did not (didn't) stop            |
| they stopped      | did they stop?            | they did not (didn't) stop           |

She **left** Lima by air.

How far **did** she **fall**? (~~... did she fell?~~)

She **did** not recognise the people. (~~... did not recognised ...~~)

'Did you like school when you were a child?'

'Yes, I **did**.' ('Yes, I liked.')

## Spelling of regular past tenses

|                                                         |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>MOST REGULAR VERBS:</b>                              |                 |
|                                                         | work → worked   |
|                                                         | start → started |
|                                                         | wait → waited   |
|                                                         | play → played   |
| <b>VERBS ENDING IN -e:</b>                              |                 |
|                                                         | hate → hated    |
|                                                         | like → liked    |
| <b>SHORT VERBS ENDING IN ONE VOWEL + ONE CONSONANT:</b> |                 |
|                                                         | stop → stopped  |
|                                                         | plan → planned  |
|                                                         | fit → fitted    |
| <b>VERBS ENDING IN CONSONANT + -y:</b>                  |                 |
|                                                         | study → studied |
|                                                         | try → tried     |

## Pronunciation of regular past tenses

1. /d/ after vowels and voiced sounds (/b/, /g/, /v/, /ð/, /l/, /z/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/)

agreed /ə'gri:d/ played /pleɪd/ lived /lɪvd/  
pulled /pʊld/ used /ju:zd/

2. /t/ after /p/, /k/, /t/, /θ/, /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/

stopped /stɒpt/ worked /wɜ:kt/  
watched /wɒtʃt/

3. /ɪd/ after /t/ and /d/

started /'stɑ:tɪd/ decided /dɪ'saɪdɪd/

## Past Progressive

|                                                                                                                  |                                                  |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I was trying<br>you were trying<br>he/she/it was trying<br>we were trying<br>you were trying<br>they were trying | was I trying?<br>were you trying?<br><i>etc.</i> | I was not (wasn't) trying<br>you were not (weren't) trying<br><i>etc.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|

We use the Past Progressive for 'background' events – to say what was going on at a particular time, or at the moment when something happened. We use the Simple Past for a shorter event which came in the middle of the 'background' event, or which interrupted it.

What were you doing  
X  
at 7.15  
last night?

I was getting ready to come home  
X  
and the  
phone rang.

Just when I was trying to finish some work  
X  
Janet  
turned up.

The TV  
broke down  
X  
while we were watching the news.

## Simple Present Perfect

| (have + past participle)                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I have (I've) seen<br>you have (you've) seen<br>he <i>etc.</i> has (he's) seen<br>we have (we've) seen<br>you have (you've) seen<br>they have (they've) seen | have I seen?<br>have you seen?<br>has she <i>etc.</i> seen?<br>have we seen?<br>have you seen?<br>have they seen? | I have not (haven't) seen<br>you have not (haven't) seen<br>he <i>etc.</i> has not (hasn't) seen<br>we have not (haven't) seen<br>you have not (haven't) seen<br>they have not (haven't) seen |

### Ways of using the Simple Present Perfect

#### – Talking about experience

'Have you ever eaten snails?'  
'Yes, I have.'  
'No, I haven't.'  
'No, I never have.'

#### – Talking about changes (differences between past and present)

The population of Fantasia **has** increased since 1950.  
The percentage of homeless people **has** fallen.  
She **has** got much fatter during the last few years.

#### – Giving news

Fantasia **has** signed a treaty with Outland.  
The River Fant **has** just burst its banks.  
I've lost my keys – could you help me look for them?

## Simple Present Perfect and Simple Past with time expressions

### 1. We use the Present Perfect:

- when we are thinking of a period of time that is not finished (for example *this week/month/year, since . . .*)
- when we mean 'at any time up to now' (for example, with *ever, never, before*)

I've changed my job three times **this year**.

(I changed my job three times . . .)

Have you seen *Carmen* **before**?

(Did you see *Carmen* before?)

Have you ever been to America?

She **has** never learnt to drive.

### 2. We use the Simple Past:

- when we are thinking of a period of time that is finished (for example with *ago, yesterday, last week/month/year etc., then, when*)

I **changed** my job **last week**.

(I ~~have~~ changed my job ~~last week~~.)

I **saw** *Carmen* **three years ago**.

(I ~~have~~ seen *Carmen* ~~three years ago~~.)

(. . . ago three years . . . before three years)

Did you go to California **last summer**?

She **learnt** to fly **when** she was 18.

## Present Perfect Progressive

|                                                                             |                                                               |                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I have (I've) been working<br>you have (you've) been working<br><i>etc.</i> | have I been working?<br>have you been working?<br><i>etc.</i> | I have not (haven't) been working<br>you have not (haven't) been working<br><i>etc.</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Using the Present Perfect Progressive

We use the Present Perfect Progressive to say that something started in the past and is still happening (or has only just finished). We often use the Present Perfect Progressive to say or ask *how long* something has been happening. We do *not* use a present tense to do this.

For the last six days he **has been visiting** Third World countries.

(~~... he is visiting ...~~)

Demonstrators **have been marching** through the centre for several hours.

Heavy rain **has been falling** steadily for the past four weeks.

Have you **been waiting** long? (~~Are you waiting long?~~)

### Non-progressive verbs

With some verbs (for example *know*, *remember*, *want*, *have* meaning 'possess', *be*), we usually use simple tenses, not progressive tenses.

They **have known** each other for a long time.

(~~They have been knowing ...~~)

How long have you **had** that coat?

(~~... have you been having ...?~~)

I've **been in** this class since October.

---

## The difference between the Present Perfect and the Present

To say *how long* something has been happening, use a Present Perfect tense, not a Present tense. Compare:

I **know** her well.

I **have known** her since 1980. (~~I know her since 1980.~~)

We **live** in Harwich.

We **have lived** here for 10 years. (~~We live here for 10 years.~~)

She **is** in the advanced class.

She **has been in** the class for three weeks. (~~She is ...~~)

He **is studying** English.

He **has been studying** English for five years.

(~~He is studying ...~~)

---

### For and since

*For* + period = *since* + beginning of period.

for 24 hours = since yesterday

for three days = since Sunday

for ten years = since we got married

for a long time = since the 15th century

I've **been working for** twelve hours.

(~~I've been working since twelve hours.~~)

I've **been working since** six a.m.

(~~I'm working since six a.m.~~)

We've **lived here for** ten years.

(~~We've lived here since ten years.~~)

(~~We live here for ten years.~~)

I've **known her since** 1980.

(~~I know her ...~~)

## Past Perfect

|                                                         |                                             |                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I had (I'd) seen<br>you had (you'd) seen<br><i>etc.</i> | had I seen?<br>had you seen?<br><i>etc.</i> | I had not (hadn't) seen<br>you had not (hadn't) seen<br><i>etc.</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|

The Past Perfect is a 'before-past': we use it to talk about a second, earlier past time.

|                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| BEFORE-PAST                | PAST                                 |
| She <b>had gone</b>        | when I <b>got</b> back to the table. |
| I'd <b>changed</b> so much | she <b>didn't realise</b> it was me. |

For the use of the Past Perfect in reported speech, see page 100.  
For the use of the Past Perfect with *if*, see page 99.

## Talking about the future

### Present Progressive (plans)

Are you doing anything this evening?  
I'm **working** on Thursday.  
We're **leaving** for Cardiff on Monday.

### Be going + infinitive (plans and predictions)

#### Plans

What are you **going to do** next year?  
I'm **going to learn** Chinese.  
We're **going to take** ten litres of water with us.

#### Predictions

We're **going to crash**!  
It's **going to rain**.  
She's **going to have** a baby.

### Will (predictions etc.)

|                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I/you/he/etc. will ('ll) go ( <del>I will to go</del> <del>he wills go</del> )<br>will I/etc. go? ( <del>do I will go?</del> )<br>I/etc. will not (won't) go |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

You **will** have a long and interesting life.  
I **hope** my children **will** be good-looking.  
They **probably won't** be tall.

Tomorrow **will** be warm and sunny.  
If you **don't eat** you'll die.

For 'll used for offers, see page 104.

## Present Progressive, going to and will: the differences

### 1. Plans:

We use both the Present Progressive and *going to* to talk about plans. We use the Present Progressive especially when we talk about times and places. Compare:

I'm **going to travel** round the world.  
I'm **travelling** to France next week.

### 2. Predictions:

We use both *going to* and *will* to predict (to say what we think or know will happen in the future). We prefer *going to* when we can 'see things coming' – when it is very clear what is going to happen. Compare:

Look! It's **going to rain**.  
Perhaps it **will snow** tomorrow.

She's **going to have** a baby.  
Do you think the baby **will have** blue eyes?



# Passives

## Simple Present Passive

| SUBJECT    | AM/IS/ARE | PAST PARTICIPLE |                 |
|------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Most paper | is        | made            | from wood.      |
| Trees      | are       | transported     | to paper mills. |

## Simple Past Passive

| SUBJECT       | WAS/WERE | PAST PARTICIPLE |                 |
|---------------|----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| The Taj Mahal | was      | built           | by Shah Jehan.  |
| <i>Hamlet</i> | was      | written         | in about 1600.  |
| The trees     | were     | blown down      | by a big storm. |

### Active and passive

The Chinese **invented** paper.  
Paper **was invented** by the Chinese.

Shakespeare **wrote** *Hamlet*.  
*Hamlet* **was written** in 1600.

### -ing form and past participle

She **is watching** TV.  
That programme **is watched** by 30 million people every week.

When I went to see her she **was writing** letters.  
*Hamlet* **was written** by Shakespeare.

## Imperatives, infinitives and -ing forms

### Imperatives

Examples: *run; tell; don't run; don't tell*

We use imperatives for giving advice and instructions.

**Run** early in the morning – it's better.  
**Meet** me at seven o'clock.

**Always wear** comfortable clothing.  
(~~Wear always comfortable clothing.~~)  
**Never run** in fog. (~~Run never in fog.~~)

**Don't run** if you've got a cold.  
**Don't tell** Carola.

### Infinitives with to

Examples: *to see; to go*

We use infinitives with to:

– after certain verbs (for example *hope, want, have, would like/love, try*)

I **hope to see** you soon.  
I **don't want to go** home.  
You **have to change** at Coventry.  
'**Would you like to dance?**' 'I'd **love to.**'  
Let's **try to understand** each other.

– after *something, anything, nothing*

Would you like **something to eat**?  
I haven't got **anything to wear**.  
There's **nothing to do**.

– after some adjectives

This is **hard to understand**.  
She's very nice **to work with**.

– to say why we do things ('infinitive of purpose')

'**Why did you come here?**' 'To **see you.**'  
(~~For see you.~~)  
You go to a supermarket **to buy food**.

## Infinitives without to

Examples: *see*; *go*

We use infinitives without to:

– after *do*, and after modal verbs (*can*, *could*, *will*, *would*, *may*, *might*, *shall*, *should*, and *must*)

Why don't you borrow something of mine?

Can you lend me some stamps?

(~~Can you to lend ...?~~)

Could you speak more slowly?

It will rain tomorrow.

What would you like?

– after *Let's*

Let's all go and see Ann.

– after *had better*

I'd better get moving.

– after *make* + object

This dress makes me look like a sack of potatoes.

---

## -ing forms

Examples: *seeing*; *going*

We use -ing forms:

– after certain verbs (for example *like*, *love*, *hate*)

I like speaking French.

I love going to the theatre.

– after all prepositions

Thank you for coming.

She's good at swimming.

– in progressive tenses

'What are you doing?' 'I'm writing letters.'

---

## Modal verbs

### The grammar of modal verbs

*Can*, *could*, *will*, *would*, *may*, *might*, *shall*, *should*, *must*, and *ought* are called 'modal verbs'. They are a special kind of auxiliary verb.

1. Modal verbs have no -s in the third-person singular present.

She can swim. (~~NOT She cans swim.~~)

It may rain tomorrow.

2. Modal verbs (except *ought*) are followed by the infinitive without *to*.

I must go. (~~I must to go.~~)

Should I phone Ann?

3. Questions and negatives are made without *do*.

Can you speak French?

(~~Do you can speak French?~~)

4. Modal verbs have no infinitives or past participles. We use other expressions instead.

When will you be able to pay?

(~~When will you can pay?~~)

I've never been able to understand her.

(~~I've never could ...~~)

You'll have to work harder next year.

(~~You'll must ...~~)

## Meaning and use

### Probability and certainty

It must be true.  
It may be true.  
It could be true.  
It might be true.  
It can't be true.

It will rain tomorrow.  
It might snow, but it's not very likely.  
If you go on this holiday, you may win \$1,000,000.  
You would feel much better if you went to bed.

### Permission and obligation

Can I go home early today?  
Excuse me. Could I speak to you for a moment?  
(More polite than *Can I . . .* ?)  
You can borrow my coat if you like.  
Applicants must be able to swim.  
Children should do some of the housework themselves.  
You ought to stop smoking.

### Past permission and obligation

I was allowed to go home early yesterday.  
(~~I could . . .~~ )  
My father had to work very hard when he was young.  
(~~My father musted . . .~~ )

### Ability

I can sing.  
I can't dance.  
'Can you swim?' 'Yes, I can.'  
Sorry, I can't see you tomorrow.  
The government cannot please everybody.  
(NOTE: *cannot* is written as one word.)  
I could swim very well when I was younger.  
If I had more time I could learn another language.  
(= . . . I would be able to learn . . . )

### Offering and asking

Can I help you?  
Could you speak more slowly, please?  
Shall I carry your bag?  
Would you like a cup of tea?

### Pronunciation: strong and weak forms

I can /kən/ swim, but I can't /kɑ:nt/ dance.  
Yes, I can /kæn/.  
You must /məst/ try harder.  
You mustn't /məsn't/ say anything to Ann.  
Yes, I must /məst/.

NOTE: *can't* is pronounced /kɑ:nt/ in British English and /kænt/ in American English.

### Had better and used to

These two expressions are used rather like modal verbs.

We use *had better* like *should*, to give advice (to other people or ourselves). The meaning is present, not past.

I'm late. I'd better go. (~~. . . I'd better to go.~~)  
Somebody had better help Alice.  
You'd better not tell anybody.

We use *used* + infinitive to talk about things that happened once, but do not happen now. There is no present *use to* . . . (We use the Simple Present instead.)  
*Did* can be used in questions and negatives.

I used to be very shy, but now I'm OK.  
People didn't use to travel by car.  
Did you use to collect stamps when you were younger?

# Nouns and articles

## Plurals of nouns

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MOST NOUNS:</b>                         | boy → boys<br>girl → girls<br>name → names<br>parent → parents                                                                                            |
| <b>NOUNS ENDING IN CONSONANT + -y:</b>     | family → families<br>secretary → secretaries                                                                                                              |
| <b>NOUNS ENDING IN -ch, -sh, -s OR -x:</b> | watch → watches<br>crash → crashes<br>address → addresses<br>six → sixes                                                                                  |
| <b>IRREGULAR:</b>                          | child → children<br>man → men<br>woman → women<br>life → lives<br>wife → wives<br>knife → knives<br>foot → feet<br>potato → potatoes<br>tomato → tomatoes |

## Pronunciation of plural -s

1. /z/ after vowels and most voiced sounds (/b/, /d/, /g/, /v/, /ð/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/)  
days /deɪz/ trees /tri:z/ heads /hedz/  
wives /waɪvz/ miles /maɪlz/ pens /penz/
2. /s/ after most unvoiced sounds (/p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, /θ/)  
cups /kʌps/ plates /pleɪts/ books /bʊks/
3. /ɪz/ after /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/  
buses /ˈbʌsɪz/ noses /ˈnoʊzɪz/ watches /ˈwɒtʃɪz/
4. Exception: house /haʊs/ → houses /ˈhaʊzɪz/

## Articles

### A and an; pronunciation of the

We use *an* before vowels.

an artist an engineer an apple an orange  
an hour (/aʊə/)

We use *a* before consonants.

a doctor a housewife a banana a tomato  
a university (/juːnɪˈvɜːsəti/)

Before vowels, *the* is pronounced /ði:/.  
the egg /ði: ˈeg/ the Italians /ði: rɪˈtæliənz/

Before consonants, *the* is pronounced /ðə/.  
the book /ðə ˈbʊk/ the problem /ðə ˈprɒbləm/

### A/an and the

We use *the* when the listener *knows which one* we are talking about.

Do you mind if I open **the window**? (*The listener knows which window.*)

Who's **the girl** in the red dress? (*I tell the listener which girl I mean.*)

We've got a cat and a dog. **The dog's** name is Pete.  
(*The listener knows which dog I mean, because of the sentence before.*)

We use *a/an* when we mean 'any one', 'it doesn't matter which one', or when the listener doesn't know which one.

I'd like to have **a dog**.  
She lives in **a small flat** somewhere in Paris.

And we use *a/an* when we give the class or group that somebody/something is in.

'What do you do?' 'I'm **a student**.' ('I'm student.')  
'What's that?' 'It's **a camera**.'

We also use *a/an* to mean 'every' in prices and measurements.

eighty pence **a kilo** fifty kilometres **an hour**

### Expressions without articles

at home (~~at the home~~) go home (~~go to home~~)  
in bed at school at work

## Countable and uncountable nouns

### The difference between countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns are the names of things that you can count. (For example: *a car, one problem, two trees, four hundred pounds*.) We can use *a/an* with countable nouns (*a/an* means 'one'). Countable nouns have plurals.

Uncountable nouns are the names of things that you can't count. (For example: *milk, air, music*: you can't normally say *two milks* or *four musics*.) Normally, we can't use *a/an* with uncountable nouns, and they have no plurals. Compare:

Would you like a sandwich?

Would you like some milk?

(~~Would you like a milk?~~)

I like those books.

I like that music. (~~I like those musics.~~)

### Generalisations: not using *the*

When we talk about things in general (for example: *all oranges, all music or all oil*), we do not use *the* with plurals or uncountables.

Oranges were expensive when I was young.

(~~The oranges....~~)

I like music. (~~I like the music.~~)

Oil is produced in Texas.

We use *the* to talk about *particular things that the listener knows about*.

'Could you pass the oranges?' 'Here you are.'

The music's too loud. Could you turn it down?

### Some problems with countables, uncountables, singulars and plurals

The following words are uncountable. We do not use them with *a/an*, and they have no plurals: *advice, information, hair, bread, news, weather, English* (and the names of other languages), *medicine, flu, toothache* (but *headache* is countable).

Could you give me some information?

(~~....an information ....some informations~~)

I'd like to give you a piece of advice.

(~~....an advice.~~)

What colour is her hair?

Here is the news.

We're having terrible weather.

(~~....a terrible weather.~~)

She speaks very good English.

(~~....a very good English.~~)

I've got toothache. (*BUT* I've got a headache.)

Words like *pound, dollar, franc, yen, peseta* are countable, but the word *money* is uncountable.

It costs eight francs.

It costs a lot of money. (~~....a lot of moneys.~~)

*Trousers, jeans, pyjamas, pants* etc. are plural. So are *glasses* and *stairs*.

Those trousers are too big for you.

I need some new jeans. (~~....a new jean.~~)

I wear glasses for reading.

It's up the stairs on the right. (~~....the stair....~~)

### *A/an* and *some/any*

We normally only use *a/an* with singular countable nouns. With plural and uncountable nouns *a/an* is not possible. We often use *some* and *any* (see below).

There's a woman at the reception desk.

There are some books on the table.

There's some milk in the fridge. (~~There's a milk....~~)



# Pronouns, determiners and question words

## Subject and object pronouns

| SUBJECT | OBJECT |
|---------|--------|
| I       | me     |
| you     | you    |
| he      | him    |
| she     | her    |
| it      | it     |
| we      | us     |
| you     | you    |
| they    | them   |

He likes me, but I don't like him.  
They've invited us to a party.  
Could you give me some water?  
'Who's that?' 'It's me.'  
I'm taller than her.

## Possessives

### Possessive determiners and pronouns

| DETERMINER | PRONOUN |
|------------|---------|
| my         | mine    |
| your       | yours   |
| his        | his     |
| her        | hers    |
| its        | —       |
| our        | ours    |
| your       | yours   |
| their      | theirs  |

That's my bicycle over there. ( ~~... the my bicycle ...~~ )  
Ann and her husband work in Stoke. ( ~~... his husband ...~~ )  
John and his wife both play tennis. ( ~~... her wife ...~~ )  
'Whose is that coat?' 'Mine.'  
Their house is bigger than our house, but I think ours  
is nicer than theirs.

### Possessive 's

Singular: -'s  
Plural: -s'

Sam is Judy's boyfriend. ( ~~... the Judy's boyfriend ...~~ )  
Susan's surname is Perkins. ( ~~Surname's Susan ...~~ )  
That's my parents' house.  
All the tourists' suitcases got put on the wrong bus.

### Pronunciation of possessive -s

|                                       |      |         |            |          |         |
|---------------------------------------|------|---------|------------|----------|---------|
| AFTER A VOWEL:                        | /z/  | Judy's  | Mary's     | Joe's    | Harry's |
| AFTER A VOICED CONSONANT:             | /z/  | Sam's   | Bob's      | Anne's   | Susan's |
| AFTER AN UNVOICED CONSONANT:          | /s/  | Eric's  | Margaret's | Jeff's   | Kate's  |
| AFTER /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/: | /ɪz/ | Alice's | Joyce's    | George's | Des's   |

## Reflexives, *each other* and *else*

### Reflexive/emphatic pronouns

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| myself   | ourselves  |
| yourself | yourselves |
| himself  | themselves |
| herself  |            |
| itself   |            |

She's always talking to herself.  
They only think about themselves.  
I usually do my ironing myself.

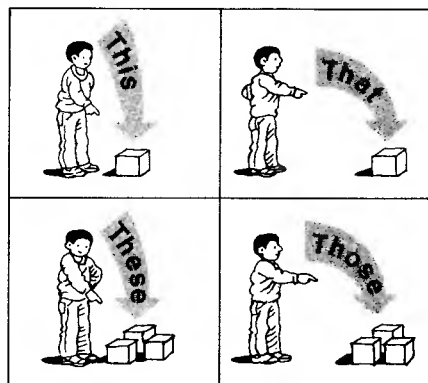
### *Each other*

People who love each other should try to be honest with each other. ( ~~People who love themselves ...~~ )

### *Somebody else*

I didn't break the window – it was somebody else.  
Do you usually go on holiday by yourself or with somebody else?

## This, that, these, and those



This cheese is terrible.  
 These tomatoes are very nice.  
 How much is **that** sweater over there?  
 I like **those** ear-rings that she's wearing.

## Some, any and no

### Some and any

We usually use *some* in affirmative ('yes') sentences, and *any* in questions and negative ('no') sentences.

| AFFIRMATIVE                                              | QUESTION                                                    | NEGATIVE                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| There's <b>some</b> bread.<br>I've got <b>some</b> eggs. | Is there <b>any</b> bread?<br>Have you got <b>any</b> eggs? | There isn't <b>any</b> bread.<br>I haven't got <b>any</b> eggs. |

### Some in questions

When we offer things or ask for things, we usually use *some* in questions.

Would you like **some** coffee?  
 Could you lend me **some** sugar?

### No (= not any)

I'm sorry, there's **no** more roast beef.  
 (= . . . there isn't **any** more . . .)

(NOTE: *No* and *not any* are negative, but *any* is not negative.)

I've got **no** friends = I haven't got **any** friends,  
 NOT ~~I've got **any** friends.~~

### Somebody, anything etc.

|           |          |            |         |
|-----------|----------|------------|---------|
| somebody  | anybody  | everybody  | nobody  |
| something | anything | everything | nothing |
| somewhere | anywhere | everywhere | nowhere |

Somebody telephoned when you were out.  
 Would you like **something** to drink?  
 Have you got **anything** to read?  
 Have you seen my glasses **anywhere**?  
 I didn't understand **anything**.  
 Everybody was late.  
 She gave **everything** to her children.  
 'What are you doing?' 'Nothing.'

*Somebody* etc. can be followed by adjectives.

I think she's **somebody** important.  
**Something** very strange happened.  
 Did **anything** interesting happen?  
 Let's go **somewhere** nice.

*Everybody, everything, nobody* and *nothing* are singular.

Is **everything** all right? (~~Are everything . . . ?~~)  
**Everybody** knows him.  
**Nobody** likes him.

## Quantifiers with uncountables and plurals

| WITH UNCOUNTABLES | WITH PLURALS |
|-------------------|--------------|
| (not) much        | (not) many   |
| how much?         | how many?    |
| too much          | too many     |
| a little          | a few        |
| more              | more         |
| enough            | enough       |
| a lot of          | a lot of     |

There isn't **much** rain here in the summer.  
Are there **many** hotels in the town?

**How much** money do you want?  
**How many** states are there in the USA?

I've got **too much** work.  
You've given me **too many** chips.

**A little** more cabbage, sir?  
And **a few** more peas?

Could I have some **more** bread?  
I'm afraid there are no **more** potatoes.

Have you got **enough** money? (~~... money enough?~~)  
There aren't **enough** buses from our village.

The children are making **a lot of** noise.  
She's got **a lot of** problems.

We can also use these words and expressions without nouns.

**How much** does it cost?  
'Do you like her?' 'Not **much**.'  
I think about you **a lot**. (~~... a lot of~~)

We use **much** and **many** mostly in questions and negative sentences. In affirmative sentences, we more often use **a lot (of)**. Compare:

Have you got **many** friends?  
I haven't got **many** friends.  
She's got **a lot of** friends.

We use **too**, not **too much**, before an adjective/adverb when there is no noun. Compare:

Am I **too** early? (~~... too much early?~~)  
You've got **too much** baggage.

**Enough** comes after an adverb, and after an adjective if there is no noun. Compare:

You're not driving **fast enough**.  
Is the beer **cold enough** to drink?  
We haven't got **enough** cold beer.

## Other determiners

### Both and all: position with verbs

- One-part verbs  
We **both** read *The Times*. (~~We read both ...~~)  
They **all** went home. (~~They went all home.~~)
- Two-part verbs  
We **have both** got bicycles. (~~We both have got ...~~)  
They **will all** come. (~~They all will come.~~)
- Are/were  
We **are both** tall. (~~We both are tall.~~)  
You **were all** wrong. (~~You all were wrong.~~)

### Both/all/neither/one + of + pronoun

**Both of** them are very tall.  
I wish I had time to talk to **all of** you.  
**Neither of** us has got a cat.  
**One of** us likes classical music, but the other doesn't.

## Question words

### Who

'Who's that?' 'It's my brother.' (~~He's my brother.~~)  
**Who** wrote *Gone with the Wind*? (~~Who did write ...?~~)  
**Who** are you looking at? (~~Who you are ...?~~)

### Which

'Which platform for the 3.49 train?' 'Platform 6.'  
**Which of** you took my bike? (~~Who of you ...?~~)

### What

'What's your name?' 'Miriam Jackson.'  
**What** does *coat* mean? (~~What means coat?~~)  
**What** time does the next train leave?  
(*NOT usually* At what time ...?)  
**What** sort of music do you like?  
'What do you do?' 'I'm a student.' ('I'm student.')  
**What** a nice colour! (~~What nice colour!~~)

### How

'My name's Ann Carter.' 'How do you do?' 'How do you do?'  
'How are you?' 'Very well, thank you. And you?'  
'How old are you?' 'I'm 35.'  
**How** did the children travel back home?  
(~~How travelled the children ...?~~)

### Where

'Where's my pen?' 'Under your book.'  
'Where are you from?' 'Egypt.'  
**Where** was Brian born? (~~Where was born Brian?~~)

### When

**When** did the Second World War start?  
(~~When started ...?~~)

### Why

'Why did you come to Australia?' 'To learn English.'  
(~~For learn English.~~)

## Question words as subject and object

When a question word is the subject of a sentence (or with the subject of a sentence), we make questions without *do*. Compare:

Who (*subject*) wrote the James Bond novels?  
(~~Who did write . . . ?~~)

Who (*object*) do you like in the class?

What (*subject*) made that noise? (~~What did make . . . ?~~)

What (*object*) do you want?

What animals (*subject*) live in trees? (~~. . . do live . . . ?~~)

What animals (*object*) did Hannibal take across the Alps? (~~What animals took Hannibal . . . ?~~)

How many children (*subject*) came to the party?  
(~~. . . did come . . . ?~~)

How many children (*object*) did you invite to the party?

## Adjectives

### Position of adjectives

#### Before nouns

Mary has got green eyes. (~~. . . greens eyes.~~)  
Sheila has got long dark hair.

#### After *be*

John is quite nice.  
My daughters are very tall. (~~. . . are very tall.~~)

### Comparative and superlative adjectives

| ONE-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES                     |                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                             | <i>Adjective</i>                           | <i>Comparative</i>                                                                 | <i>Superlative</i>                                                                    |
| <b>MOST ONE-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES:</b>        | old<br>short<br>cheap<br>young<br><br>long | older<br>shorter<br>cheaper<br>younger<br>(/'jʌŋgə(r)/)<br>longer<br>(/'lɒŋgə(r)/) | oldest<br>shortest<br>cheapest<br>youngest<br>(/'jʌŋgɪst/)<br>longest<br>(/'lɒŋgɪst/) |
| <b>ENDING IN -e:</b>                        | late<br>fine                               | later<br>finer                                                                     | latest<br>finest                                                                      |
| <b>ENDING IN ONE VOWEL + ONE CONSONANT:</b> | fat<br>slim<br>big                         | fatter<br>slimmer<br>bigger                                                        | fattest<br>slimmest<br>biggest                                                        |
| <b>IRREGULAR:</b>                           | good<br>bad<br>far                         | better<br>worse<br>farther                                                         | best<br>worst<br>farthest                                                             |
| TWO-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES                     |                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                       |
|                                             | <i>Adjective</i>                           | <i>Comparative</i>                                                                 | <i>Superlative</i>                                                                    |
| <b>ENDING IN -y:</b>                        | happy<br>easy                              | happier<br>easier                                                                  | happiest<br>easiest                                                                   |
| <b>MOST OTHERS:</b>                         | complete<br>famous                         | more complete<br>more famous                                                       | most complete<br>most famous                                                          |
| LONGER ADJECTIVES                           |                                            |                                                                                    |                                                                                       |
|                                             | <i>Adjective</i>                           | <i>Comparative</i>                                                                 | <i>Superlative</i>                                                                    |
|                                             | interesting<br>beautiful<br>difficult      | more interesting<br>more beautiful<br>more difficult                               | most interesting<br>most beautiful<br>most difficult                                  |

## Using comparatives and superlatives

### Comparatives

I'm taller than my mother.  
She's more intelligent than me.

### Superlatives

Who's the oldest person here?  
I'm the tallest in my family.  
It's the most beautiful place in the world.  
(.... of the world.)

Which car is the fastest?  
Which can carry the most people?

### Modification of comparatives

She's a bit older than me.  
A plane is much faster than a train.  
A bus can carry far more people than a car.  
A car costs much less than a plane.

### Less and least with adjectives

Dürer looks less happy than the king.  
My brother's less self-confident than me.  
She's the least selfish person I know.

### More and most with nouns

A plane has got more wheels than a pram.  
A plane can carry the most people.

### Less/least with uncountable nouns

I've got less free time than ever before in my life.  
Who does the least work in this office?

### Fewer/fewest with plural nouns

There are fewer people here than last week.  
(NOTE: ... less people is also possible.)  
The person who makes the fewest mistakes is not always the best.

## Comparisons with as

### (Not) as + adjective/adverb + as

I'm as good-looking as a film star.  
He's not as tall as me.  
Your car doesn't go as fast as ours.

### (Not) as much/many as

She's got as much money as me.  
A car hasn't got as many wheels as a lorry.  
A bicycle doesn't cost as much as a motorbike.

### As and than

faster than (~~faster as~~)  
more beautiful than  
as fast as (~~as fast than~~)

### Note also:

the same as  
different from

## Adverbs

### Adjectives and adverbs

We use adjectives before nouns and after *be*.

We use adverbs to give more information about verbs and adjectives.

Compare:

You've got a nice face. (*adjective*)  
You sing nicely. (*adverb*)  
(~~You sing nice.~~)

It's terrible. (*adjective*)  
It's terribly cold. (*adverb*)  
(~~It's terrible cold.~~)

I'm angry with you. (*adjective*)  
She spoke angrily. (*adverb*)  
(~~She spoke angry.~~)

You speak good English. (*adjective*)  
You speak English well. (*adverb*)  
(~~You speak English good.~~)

### Spelling of -ly adverbs

|                                   | ADJECTIVE                  | ADVERB                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MOST WORDS:</b>                | kind<br>careful<br>extreme | kindly<br>carefully ( <del>carefuly</del> )<br>extremely ( <del>extremly</del> ) |
| <b>ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -y:</b>   | happy<br>angry             | happily<br>angrily                                                               |
| <b>ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ble:</b> | comfortable                | comfortably                                                                      |



## Position of adverbs

Don't put adverbs between the verb and the object.

She speaks English well. (~~She speaks well English.~~)

I opened the letter carefully. (~~I opened carefully the letter.~~)

I never read science fiction. (~~I read never science fiction.~~)

## Frequency adverbs: how often?

### How often?

How often do you go to the cinema?

Do you ever go to the opera?

### From most to least often

I always have coffee for breakfast.

I usually have toast and butter.

I very often go away at weekends.

I often go out in the evenings.

I sometimes go to the cinema.

I don't stay at home very often.

I occasionally travel abroad.

I hardly ever eat fish.

I never play golf.

### Position of frequency adverbs

#### – One-part verbs

I always have coffee for breakfast.

(~~I have always coffee ...~~)

I very often go away at weekends.

(~~I go very often away ...~~)

#### – Two-part verbs

She has always been friendly to me.

(~~She always has been ...~~)

We were often invited to her house.

(~~We often were invited ...~~)

I can never understand what she says.

(~~I never can understand ...~~)

#### – Am/are/is/was/were

She is usually late.

(~~She usually is late.~~)

I am never at home these days.

(~~I never am at home ...~~)

### Regular frequency

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| I come here | every day.          |
|             | every three days.   |
|             | once a day.         |
|             | twice a week.       |
|             | three times a year. |

## Adverbs of degree

### With adjectives

|     |            |        |
|-----|------------|--------|
| I'm | not at all | tired. |
|     | not very   |        |
|     | a bit      |        |
|     | quite      |        |
|     | very       |        |
|     | extremely  |        |

### With verbs

I very much like football.

I quite like walking.

I don't much like washing up.

I don't like washing clothes at all.

## Comparative and superlative adverbs

We usually make comparative and superlative adverbs with *more* and *most*.

Could you speak more slowly?

She sings most beautifully.

Exceptions: *faster, fastest; better, best.*

She can run faster than me.

I speak English better than my father.

# Prepositions

## Talking about time

I'll see you **at** ten o'clock.  
    **in** the morning.  
    **on** Thursday.  
    **on** Thursday morning.  
    **on** June 22nd.  
    **at** the weekend.

I don't work **on** Saturdays.

I'll see you **in** three days.  
    (= three days from now)

We go skiing every year **for** two weeks.  
I've been here **for** six weeks.  
    **since** Christmas.

I work **from** nine to/**until** six.  
I'll be here **until** a quarter to three.

She only studies **before** exams.  
I'm free **after** six o'clock.

half **past** nine  
five to ten

## No preposition


What time do you get up? (*NOT usually* At what time . . . ?)

I'll see you **this** afternoon.

I'll see you **next** week.

I saw her **last** week.

## Talking about place

on  


It's **on** the table. (~~... in the table.~~)  
    **under** your chair.  
    **in** the fridge.  
    **near** the door.

**in** the living room  
**in** a small flat  
**on** the second floor  
**at** No 53 Park Street  
**in** Park Street  
**in** London  
**in** England

He lived **in** Saigon.  
He studied **at** Saigon University.

I'm going to Edinburgh tomorrow. (~~... going at ...~~)  
I'll arrive at Waverley Station at 9.15.  
    (~~... arrive to ...~~)

She was the first woman to fly **across** the Atlantic.  
    **round** the world.

'Where are you **from**?' 'I'm **from** Ireland.'

He's **at** the disco.  
    **at** the supermarket.  
    **at** the doctor's.  
    **at** the bus stop.  
    **at** the station.  
    **at** home. (~~at the home.~~)  
    **at** work. (~~at the work.~~)  
    **at** school. (~~at the school.~~)  
    **at** lunch. (~~at the lunch.~~)  
    **in** bed. (~~in the bed.~~)  
    **on** his way to work.

It's **by** the reception desk.  
    **near** the stairs.  
    **next** to the post office.  
    **opposite** the station.  
    **outside** the window.  
    **behind** the tree.  
    **in** front of the tree.  
    **between** those two trees.

Go straight **on** for 300 metres and it's **on** the right.

Our bedroom is **over** the living room.

He got **into** his car and drove away.  
She got **out** of the car and went **into** the house.

## No preposition

I want to go home. (~~... to home.~~)

## Other uses of prepositions

Here's a letter **for** you.

the girl **in** jeans  
the man **with** a beard  
My sister looks **like** me.

We're all slim **except** Joe.

'How old is she?' 'Over 20.'  
    'Under 30.'

good **at** maths  
good **at** running

the highest mountain **in** the world. (~~... of the world.~~)

We went to Spain **on** holiday.  
We went there **by** bus/car/train/air.

I often think **about** you.  
We were talking **about** money.

I can't go **without** sleep for very long.

Look **at** my new dress.  
Would you like to listen to some music?  
I'm looking **for** a sweater.

# Putting things together

## And; but; both . . . and; neither . . . nor

I went into the kitchen **and** looked in all the cupboards,  
but I couldn't find any sugar.  
Both Ann **and** I like riding.  
Neither Ann **nor** I can swim.

---

## Because

She left university **because** she wanted to learn to fly.  
**Because** you were so rude to me, I've decided not to see  
you again.

---

## Conjunctions of time

**When** I'm bored I go and see friends.  
I'll phone you **when** I get home.  
(~~... when I will get home.~~)

**As soon as** the kettle boils, I'll make tea.  
(~~As soon as the kettle will boil ...~~)  
**Do you get up as soon as** you wake up?

**Before** you buy something, do you always ask the price?  
Always warm up **before** you go running.

**After** I leave school I'm going to travel.  
(~~After I will leave school ...~~)  
Rest for a few minutes **after** you finish running.  
Will you keep working **until** you're 60?

---

## If

### Ordinary tenses

**If** both parents have got blue eyes, their children will  
have blue eyes.  
We usually go walking at the weekend **if** the weather's  
fine.  
**If** you see a black cat, you'll have good luck.  
(~~If you will see ...~~)  
I'll let you know **if** I hear from John.  
(~~... if I will hear ...~~)

### Unreal and improbable situations: past tense and *would*

**If** today was Sunday, I **would be** in bed.  
**If** I won \$1,000,000, I **would buy** a fast car.  
(~~If I would win ...~~)  
He **would tell** us **if** he knew.  
(~~... if he would know.~~)  
It **would be better** **if** you told us the truth.

### *If I were* etc.

We often use *were* instead of *was* after *if*, especially  
in the expression *if I were you*.

**If** my French *was/were* better, I'd have a chance of  
passing the exams.  
I **wouldn't** do that **if** I *were* you.

### Talking about the past: past perfect and *would have* . . .

**If** his parents *had been* well off, he **would have gone** to  
university.  
**If** he *hadn't* worked in the bank, he **wouldn't have gone**  
to Italy.  
**Where would** he have gone **if** he *had decided* not to go  
to Italy?  
**If** he *had joined* the army earlier he **would have been**  
sent to Germany.

### *If and when*

**If** I get enough money, I'll travel round the world.  
(I may possibly get enough money.)  
**When** I get older I'll stop playing rugby.  
(I will certainly get older.)

## Reported speech

### Reported statements and thoughts

'You will never get married.'  
Maria said (that) I would never get married.  
(~~Maria said that I will ...~~)

'We're going to take ten litres of water.'  
They said (that) they were going to take ...

'I like my boss.'  
She said (that) she liked her boss.  
(~~She said that she likes her boss.~~)

I didn't realise that you liked your boss.  
I thought you hated him.

'I've been to Venice.'  
He told Janet that he had been to Venice.

### Say and tell

Fred said that he lived in Paris and California.  
(~~Fred said Janet that ...~~)  
He told Janet that he had been photographing  
the President. (~~He told that ...~~)

### Reported questions

'Where do you work?'  
She asked me where I worked.  
(~~She asked me where I work.~~)  
(~~She asked me where did I work.~~)  
(~~She asked me 'where did I work?'~~)  
(~~She asked me where did I work?~~)

'Where is your home?'  
She asked me where my home was.  
(~~She asked me where was my home.~~)

'Do you like living there?'  
She asked me if I liked living there.

### Reported instructions and requests

'You must tidy up afterwards.'  
She told him to tidy up afterwards.  
'Please don't make so much noise.'  
She asked him not to make so much noise.

## Relative clauses

### Who, that and where

Paula is a young doctor who plays tennis.  
Lewis is a company director who eats too much.  
A watch is a thing that tells you the time.  
A hat is a thing that you wear on your head.  
A platform is a place where you wait for a train.

### Leaving out object pronouns

A hat is a thing (that) you wear on your head.  
I often give presents to people (who) I like.

## Joining sentences

### Structuring paragraphs

When I ..., I usually ... First of all, I ... Then I ... and  
... Next I ... After that I ... Then I ... until ...  
Before I ..., I ... Finally I ...

### Linking expressions

|                                 |                                 |                                                  |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Look ...                        | Well, yes, I know.              | perhaps/maybe not                                |
| You're <u>just</u> too old.     | What's he like, <u>then</u> ?   | I don't know.                                    |
| Well, yes, OK.                  | Well, you know.                 | on the other hand                                |
| So what?                        | No, <u>actually</u> , he isn't. | I <u>do think</u> my eyes are too small, though. |
| You haven't even got any money. | perhaps/maybe                   | Still, they're pretty.                           |

## Position of prepositions and adverb particles

### Prepositions in questions

Where are you from? (~~From where are you?~~)  
What are you looking at?  
Who are you talking about?

### Prepositions in relative clauses

A chair is a thing (that) you sit on.  
A tap is a thing (that) water comes out of.

### Adjective + infinitive + preposition

She's easy to work with.  
He's nice to talk to.

### Position of adverb particle

Could you pick that book up?  
OR: Could you pick up that book?  
Could you pick it up? (~~Could you pick up it?~~)  
You'd better take your sweater off.  
OR: You'd better take off your sweater.  
You'd better take it off. (~~You'd better take off it.~~)

# Problems with some words

## Verbs with two objects

Some verbs (for example *bring, give, lend, show, tell*) often have two objects.

Could you bring me some water?  
Can I give you a little more coffee?  
Could you lend me some sugar?

Could you show me some black sweaters, please?  
I told the policemen my address.

---

## Lend and borrow

*Lend* is like *give*; *borrow* is like *take*.

Could you lend me some sugar?  
Could I borrow some sugar (from you)?  
(Could I borrow you some sugar?)

---

## Like and would like

*Like* means 'enjoy'; *would like* means 'want'.

'Do you like dancing?' 'Yes, I do. I go dancing every weekend.'  
'Would you like to dance?' 'No, thanks. I'm tired.'

---

## Like + object + infinitive

Would you like me to switch the lights on?

---

## Get

1. *Get* + object = 'obtain', 'receive', 'fetch'.

Where can I get some stamps?  
I get a letter from my mother every week.  
Can you get me some bread, please?

2. *Get* + adjective = 'become'.

It's getting late.  
If you work too hard you'll get tired.

3. *Get* + adverb particle/preposition = 'move'.

What time do you usually get up?  
It takes me an hour to get to work.  
Get on the bus outside the station, and get off at Park Street.  
Get out!!

4. *Have got* = 'have', 'possess', 'be related to'.

You've got beautiful eyes.  
Have you got any brothers or sisters?

5. *Get lost, married, killed* = 'become lost, married etc.'

We went for a walk and got lost in the woods.  
She's getting married next week.  
He got killed in a car crash.

---

## Be like, look like and look

'What is she like?' (~~How is she?~~)  
'She's a bit shy, but very nice.'

She looks bad-tempered.  
You look tired.

He looks like a footballer.  
I think he looks more like a businessman.  
She looks like her mother.

---

## Born

I was born in 1936. (~~I am born ...~~)  
When were you born?



## Agree

I agree. (~~I am agree.~~)  
He doesn't agree.

---

## Still, yet and already

We use *still* to talk about *continuation*.

John's still in bed.

We use *yet* to ask whether *expected actions* have happened, or to say that they haven't.

Has John got up yet?

He hasn't got up yet.

---

We use *already* to say things have happened *earlier than expected*.

Susan is already dressed.

---

## Such and so

We use *such* before nouns (with or without adjectives).

She's such a good dancer.

He's such a handsome man.

They're such fools.

---

We use *so* before adjectives (without nouns).

She's so good.

He's so handsome.

They're so stupid.

---

## Conversational grammar

### Leaving out subjects

'What did you do?' '(I) had lunch with her.'

(It) sounds like a boring day.

'Did anything interesting happen?' '(I) don't think so. (I) can't remember.'

---

### Auxiliary verbs without main verbs

#### Short answers

'Is it raining?' 'Yes, it is.'

'Have you got a cold?' 'No, I haven't.'

'Can you speak French?' 'Yes, I can a bit.'

'Are you ready?' 'No, I'm not.'

'Do you like skiing?' 'Yes, I do.'

'Did you sleep well?' 'No, I didn't.'

'Give my love to Andy.' 'I will.'

#### Showing interest: reply questions

'It's raining.' 'Is it?'

'I've got a cold.' 'Oh, have you?'

'My father can speak five languages.' 'Can he?'

'I'm Pisces.' 'Are you?'

'I love skiing.' 'Do you really?'

'I slept badly last night.' 'Oh, did you?'

#### So am I etc.

'I've got a pink Rolls-Royce.' 'So have I.' 'I haven't.'

'I'm tired.' 'So am I.' 'I'm not.'

'Mary can swim.' 'So can Alice.' 'Louise can't.'

'I go skiing twice a year.' 'So do I.' 'I don't.'

'John phoned last night.' 'So did your mother.'

#### Question tags

It is . . . , isn't it?

You will . . . , won't you?

She can . . . , can't she?

They have . . . , haven't they?

You remember . . . , don't you?

She likes . . . , doesn't she?

It isn't . . . , is it?

You won't . . . , will you?

She can't . . . , can she?

They haven't . . . , have they?

You don't . . . , do you?

It's raining, isn't it?

You'll tell Ann, won't you?

She likes fish, doesn't she?

Joe can't swim, can he?

The children haven't come back yet, have they?

You didn't see Lucy on your way, did you?

#### Intonation of question tags

##### Real questions

'You're French, aren't you?' 'No, I'm Swiss.'

##### Asking for agreement

'Nice day, isn't it?' 'Yes, lovely.'

# Doing things in English

## Meeting and greeting

### Introductions; meeting people

'Joe, this is Pat.' 'How do you do?'

'How do you do?'

I'd like to introduce . . .

This is . . .

Do you know . . . ?

May I introduce myself? My name's . . .

Excuse me, aren't you . . . ?

I'm glad to meet you.

I'm sorry. I didn't catch your name.

Nice to see you again.

Where are you from?

Whereabouts in . . . ?

### Formal greetings

Good morning/afternoon/evening.

Goodbye / Good night.

### Informal greetings

Hi/Hello.

Bye / Goodbye / See you.

### Asking about health

'How are you?' 'Very well, thanks.'

'Fine, thanks. And you?'

'Not too bad.'

---

## Asking for personal information

'Where are you from?' 'Scotland.'

'Where do you live?' 'In Edinburgh.'

'Where do you work?' 'In a small shop in George Street.'

'What's your phone number?' '7623305.' (Seven six two, double three oh five.)

'What newspaper do you read?' '*The Independent*.'

'How do you travel to work?' 'By bus.'

'What sort of books do you like?' 'Science fiction.'

'Are you interested in politics?' 'Yes, I am.'

---

## Opinions, likes and dislikes

'How do you like this place?' 'Great / Not bad / Not much / Terrible.'

Do you like modern jazz?

What do you think of the government?

What's your favourite food?

I like dancing very much.

I quite like sport.

It's OK.

I like football best.

I hate shopping.

I don't like classical music at all.

'Do you like travelling?' 'It depends.'

---

## Apologising

'Excuse me, is your name Fred Andrews?'

'No, I'm sorry, it's not. It's Jake Barker.'

'Pardon?'

'It's Jake Barker.'

'Oh, I'm sorry.'

'That's all right.'

---

## Inviting and answering invitations

'Are you doing anything this evening? Would you like to see a film?'

'I don't know, I'm a bit tired. I don't really want to go out tonight.'

'Well, what about tomorrow?'

'Let me look in my diary. No, I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'm not free. I'm going to a concert in London.'

'How about Thursday?'

'Thursday's a bit difficult. Let's do something at the weekend. Are you free?'

'Perhaps. Yes, why not?'

'How about Saturday? Shall we have dinner?'

'What a nice idea!'

'OK. See you about eight o'clock.'

'Could it be earlier? Half past seven?'

'Right, see you then.'

---

## Making suggestions

'I haven't got anything to wear.' 'What/How about your blue dress?'

Why don't you borrow something of mine?

Why not borrow something of mine?

I'll lend you my new shoes.

'Shall I iron it for you?' 'If you really don't mind.'

## Discussion: opinions and advice

I think we **should** take a lot of water.  
You **shouldn't** mend it with the wheels on.  
**Why don't you** turn it sideways?  
**Don't forget** to put it on the table.  
**Remember** to take the wheels off first.  
It would be better to turn it upside down.

That's right.  
You're right.  
I think you're wrong.  
I agree. (~~I am agree.~~)  
I don't agree.

---

## Asking for and giving permission

|                  |                     |                                        |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Do you mind if I | sit here?           | I'm sorry, it's not free.              |
|                  | open the window?    | Well, it's a bit cold.                 |
|                  | smoke?              | Well, I'd rather you didn't.           |
|                  | look at your paper? | Well, I'm reading it myself, actually. |
|                  |                     | Not at all.                            |
|                  |                     | No, please do.                         |
|                  |                     | Go ahead.                              |

---

## Asking for things; asking for help; borrowing and lending

|                                                                           |                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Can you give me a hand? ( <i>informal</i> )                               | Yes, here you are.                |
| Could you (possibly) help me for a few minutes?<br>( <i>more formal</i> ) | Yes, of course.                   |
| Can you lend me a stamp?                                                  | I'm sorry, I need it/them.        |
| I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you lend me<br>some sugar?            | I'm afraid I haven't got one/any. |
| Could you possibly lend me your car?                                      | I'm sorry, I'm afraid I can't.    |
| Could I borrow your keys for a moment?                                    |                                   |

---

## Offers and replies

|                                  |                                                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Shall I open it for you?         | Would you like some tea?                          |
| No thanks. I can do it myself.   | I'd prefer coffee, if you've got some.            |
| I'll answer it, shall I?         | Would you like to dance?                          |
| That's very kind of you.         | I'd love to.                                      |
| Can I hang your coat up for you? | Would you like to go and see a film this evening? |
| No thanks. I'll keep it on.      | Not this evening, thanks. Perhaps another time?   |
| Would you like some toast?       | Would you like me to carry that for you?          |
| I'd love some.                   | Thank you very much.                              |

---

## Telling people to do things

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Please hurry!   | Wait here, please. |
| Take your time. | Be careful.        |
| Don't worry.    | Follow me, please. |
| Look.           | Look out!          |
| Come in.        |                    |

---

## Restaurants: ordering and asking

|                                                              |                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I'll start with soup, please, and then I'll have roast beef. | a little more coffee                 |
| Chicken for me, please.                                      | Could you bring us the bill, please? |
| Could you bring me a beer?                                   | Is service included?                 |
| Just some water, please.                                     |                                      |

---

## Shopping

|                                                            |                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 'Can I help you?' 'I'm just looking.'                      | 'No, I'm afraid I haven't. Would you like to try these?' |
| 'I'm looking for a sweater.' 'Here's a lovely one.'        | ( <del>Would you like try these?</del> )                 |
| What a lovely sweater! ( <del>What lovely sweater!</del> ) | How much are they? How much is it?                       |
| What nice shoes!                                           | I'll take them, please.                                  |
| Those aren't very nice. I don't like that very much.       | I'd like a red one.                                      |
| Can I look round?                                          | I'd like to look at some watches.                        |
| Can I try them on?                                         | ( <del>I'd like look at some watches.</del> )            |
| 'Have you got anything in black?' 'I'll just see.'         |                                                          |

## Asking for things when you don't know the words

a thing **with** a hole / **with** a handle

a machine for **making** holes

a tool for **cutting** wood

a thing for **putting** pieces of paper together

some material for **making** curtains

some liquid for **cleaning** windows

some powder for **washing** clothes

some stuff for **killing** insects

---

## Asking for and giving directions

Excuse me. Where's the nearest post office, please?

Excuse me. Is there a post office near here, please?

It's over there by the police station.

First on the right, then second on the left.

Take the first right, second left, then straight on.

How far is it?

About a hundred metres.

About a hundred yards.

Thank you very much.

Not at all.

I'm sorry. I don't know.

Thank you anyway.

---

## Talking about feeling ill

I feel ill.

What's the matter?

My eyes hurt. My arm hurts.

Do they hurt / Does it hurt very badly?

I've got a (bad) cold / a (bad) headache /

(bad) toothache / flu / a temperature.

(*American*: a toothache; the flu)

Why don't you see the doctor / dentist?

---

## Telephoning

Can/Could I speak to . . . ?

This is . . .

Is that . . . ? (*American*: Is this . . . ?)

He/She's not in.

Can I take a message?

---

## Describing

a woman **with** dark hair

a woman **who** has dark hair

a dark-haired woman

a person **with** a thin face

a person **who** has a thin face

a **thin-faced** person

---

## Probability and certainty

I know | she's at home.

I'm sure

I think

Perhaps

She's | certainly | at home.  
| probably |

She | **must** | be at home.

**may**

**might**

**could**

**can't**

---

## Talking about ages, heights and weights

The Great Pyramid is 4,500 years **old**.

It is 135 metres **high**.

The car is 4 metres **long**.

The statue **weighs** three kilos.

Lucy is four months **old**.

Her mother is 40 (years **old**).

I **am** 1 metre 91.

I **weigh** 85 kilos.

She's over 21 and **under** 30.

How old/tall are you?

How much do you weigh?

---

## Formal and informal language

MORE FORMAL

Hello.

How are you?

Very well, thank you.

Goodbye.

Excuse me.

Could you lend me . . . ?

Thank you very much.

Do you mind if . . . ?

LESS FORMAL

Hi.

How's it going?

Not too bad.

See you.

Hey!

Have you got . . . ?

Thanks a lot.

Is it OK if . . . ?

## Asking about English

What's this? What's this called in English, please?  
What are these?  
Is this a pen or a pencil? Is this a lighter?  
How do you say *arroyo* in English?  
What's the English for *arroyo*?  
What does *shy* mean? (~~What means shy?~~)  
What do you say when . . . ?

Can you explain this word/expression/sentence?  
How do you pronounce k-n-e-w?  
How do you spell that word?  
Is this correct: . . . ?  
I don't understand this.  
Could you speak more slowly, please?

---

## Dates

| WRITE             | SAY                                                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 14 Jan(uary) 1990 | January the fourteenth, nineteen ninety (GB)                              |
| 14.1.90 (GB)      |                                                                           |
| 1.14.90 (US)      | January fourteenth . . . (US)                                             |
| 5 Apr(il) 1892    | April the fifth, eighteen ninety-two                                      |
| 9 Dec(ember) 1600 | December the ninth, sixteen hundred                                       |
| 14 May 1906       | May the fourteenth, nineteen hundred and six<br>OR: . . . nineteen oh six |

---

## Writing formal letters

|                                                    |                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                    | Flat 6<br>Monument House<br>Castle Street<br>Newcastle NE1 2HH<br>12 September 1990 |
| Dear Mr Bell,                                      |                                                                                     |
| I am arriving at Waverley Station, Edinburgh . . . |                                                                                     |
| . . .                                              |                                                                                     |
| I look forward to seeing you.                      |                                                                                     |
| Yours sincerely,                                   |                                                                                     |
| Paul Sanders                                       |                                                                                     |



# Additional reading

## Section A

### Chant

This poem comes from the Dinka people of the Sudan.

In the time when Dendid created<sup>1</sup> all things,  
He created the sun,  
And the sun is born, and dies, and comes again;  
He created the moon,  
And the moon is born, and dies, and comes again;  
He created the stars,  
And the stars are born, and die, and come again;  
He created man,  
And man is born, and dies, and never comes again.

(from *Voices from Twentieth-Century Africa*)

created<sup>1</sup>: made something new

### A person who happens to be blind<sup>1</sup>



John Bailey is blind and has a guide dog named Elgar. John finds that many people don't know what to do or say when they meet someone like him who can't see. Here he explains how to behave towards blind people and their dogs.

- Remember I am an ordinary person, just blind. You don't need to shout or talk to me as if I cannot understand. If you are giving me a cup of tea or coffee, then I can tell you how I take it – you don't have to ask my wife.
- I can walk more easily with you than by myself, but please don't grab my arm; let me take yours. When I am with Elgar, I will drop the handle on his harness to tell him he is no longer working, and I will take your left arm with my right. I will keep half a step behind so that I can feel it when we are about to go up or down steps or a kerb. Going downstairs, I prefer to hold the handrail if there is one.
- It is always nice for me to know who is in the room with us, so please do introduce me – and to the cat and dog! And if you come into a room where I am, please do speak so I know you're there.
- If I am somewhere new, you will have to guide me to a chair and tell me about things in my way or on the floor. Don't forget about lampshades – they often stick out into my path and I do hate breaking things!
- At mealtimes, I may ask for a little help, particularly with cutting up meat. And you can make my meal a lot more enjoyable by telling me where which food is on my plate – for example 'Chicken at 9 o'clock, peas at 3 o'clock and potatoes at 6 o'clock – and a glass of water at 2 o'clock.'
- Words like 'see' don't worry me, so you needn't be embarrassed about using them; I use them too. I am always glad to see people.
- Elgar loves attention, but remember never to distract<sup>2</sup> him when he's working, as my safety depends on him. And, of course, please don't feed<sup>3</sup> him titbits – he gets very properly fed at home and will get fat if you feed him too!
- The most important thing of all is not to think of me as a blind person; I am a person who happens to be blind.

(from *Forward* – the Journal of The Guide Dogs for the Blind Association)

happens to be blind<sup>1</sup>: is blind by chance

distract<sup>2</sup>: make him interested in something else

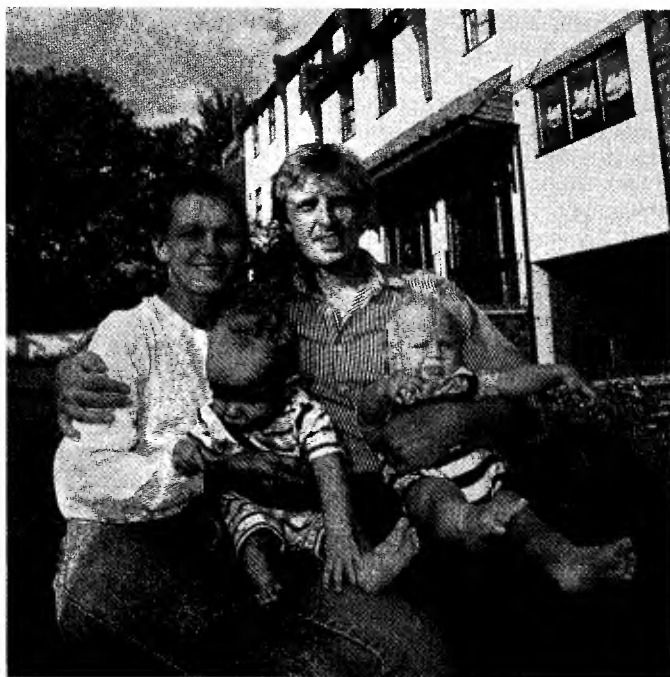
feed<sup>3</sup>: give food to

Decide if the following are true (T) or false (F).

1. John likes people to help him walk.
2. He doesn't worry if he breaks things.
3. He has dinner at 9 o'clock.
4. He is blind but he can see people a little bit.
5. He doesn't like people to give his dog food.

## Section B

### There doesn't seem any need to be married



At the age of 40, ballet dancer Lesley Collier has just become the mother of twin boys. She has been married twice and now lives with the twins' father, Guy Niblett, who is also a ballet dancer.

Lesley has lived with Guy for just over three years, six months longer than she has been divorced from her second husband, ballet critic Nicholas Dromgoole. Nicholas was 19 years her senior. Guy is 11 years her junior, blond and deliciously handsome with twinkling blue eyes.

'I have never managed to find someone of my own age,' she smiled. 'The relationship with Guy was something I didn't want to get into, because he is so much younger. I worried terribly about it. But when I bought my flat [after she left her second husband] he began to stay nights and I kept saying "I must not make this permanent". Then he moved in and I still said "I must not make it permanent," but now I feel it's important for us to be together and I've stopped worrying.

'Certainly when I was the younger partner in a relationship with Nicholas the age difference didn't worry me, although he worried about it. I think it bothers the older person rather than the younger one. Nicholas gave our relationship ten years.<sup>2</sup> He knew I would go off and find a younger man. But we have remained good friends and he loves the twins.' Will she marry again?

'I doubt it. We have a very happy relationship. There doesn't seem any need to be married and I actually don't want to.'

(from an article in *The Mail on Sunday YOU Magazine*)

<sup>permanent</sup><sup>1</sup>: lasting forever

<sup>gave our relationship ten years</sup><sup>2</sup>: thought our relationship would last about ten years

Look carefully at the text to decide if the following are true (T) or false (F).

1. Nicholas is 59 now.
2. Guy is 29 now.
3. 'her senior' means 'younger than her'.
4. Lesley has been divorced for 3½ years.
5. Guy was 29 when he and Lesley started living together.

### What do you dream about?

Most of us dream for about two hours each night and almost always about people: for 45 per cent of the time about people we know and 55 per cent those that we do not. Men are twice as likely to dream of men as of women and for both sexes only 30 per cent of dreams are of groups of people, compared with 70 per cent about individual characters.

Apparently we rarely dream about people in the public eye but some 20 per cent of our dreams include our family. Mothers appear 34 per cent of the time, fathers 27 per cent, brothers 14 per cent and sisters 12 per cent. On the whole, the themes of our dreams tend towards the unhappy, with fear occurring in 40 per cent, anger in 18 per cent and sadness in 6 per cent.

(from *Vital Statistics* by Gyles Brandreth)

Were you surprised by the facts in the passage? Write what things *you* dream about.

## Section C

### Women, transport and safety



Read this with a dictionary – but don't look up more than eight of the underlined words.

Many women are attacked when using transport or driving. What can they do to avoid this?

*Police advice when:*

*Driving*

- Get your car serviced and check petrol regularly.
- Make the effort to join a breakdown organisation.
- Keep a map handy.
- Make sure you have change for emergency calls.
- Park in well-lit, preferably busy areas. On returning, have your key ready. Check the back seat. Keep windows closed and doors locked.
- If you think you're about to break down on a motorway, park as near to an emergency phone as you can.
- If you think you're being followed, drive until you reach a busy place or a police station.

*Using a mini-cab<sup>1</sup>*

- Never get in a cab you haven't ordered.
- Use a cab firm you know, ask what colour and kind of car is likely to come, try to get the driver's name.

*Using tubes, trains or buses*

- Sit near women or the driver when on buses.
- On tubes and trains try to sit in the compartment nearest the guard or driver. Never sit in a single compartment or an empty one. Move if you have to.
- At the station, wait near the ticket office.

*Other action*

- If you work late, ask for a cab home to be paid for you.
- When out with friends, try to see each other home as far as possible. Ring and check they've all arrived.

(adapted from an article in *Company* magazine)

*mini-cab<sup>1</sup>*: a kind of taxi

### Talk

This story, about a day when everything began to talk, is told by the Ashanti people of Ghana.

Once, not far from the city of Accra on the Gulf of Guinea, a country man went out to his garden to dig up<sup>1</sup> some yams to take to market. While he was digging, one of the yams said to him: 'Well, at last you're here. You never weeded<sup>2</sup> me, but now you come around with your digging stick. Go away and leave me alone!'

The farmer turned around and looked at his cow in surprise.

'Did you say something?' he asked.

The cow said nothing, but the man's dog spoke up.

'It wasn't the cow who spoke to you,' the dog said. 'It was the yam. The yam says leave him alone.'

The man became angry, so he took his knife and cut a branch from a palm tree to hit his dog. Just then the palm tree said: 'Put that branch down!'

The man was getting very upset and he started to throw the palm branch away, but the palm branch said: 'Man, put me down softly!'

He put the branch down gently on a stone, and the stone said: 'Hey, take that thing off me.'

This was enough, and the frightened farmer started to run for his village. On the way he met a fisherman with a fish trap on his head.

'What's the hurry?' the fisherman asked.

'My yam said, "Leave me alone!" Then the dog said, "Listen to what the yam says!" When I went to whip the dog with a palm branch the tree said, "Put that branch down!" Then the palm branch said, "Do it softly!" Then the stone said, "Take that thing off me!"'

'Is that all?' the man with the fish trap asked. 'Is that so frightening?'

'Well,' the man's fish trap said, 'did he take it off the stone?'

'Wah!' the fisherman shouted. He began to run with the farmer, and on the trail they met a weaver with a bundle of cloth on his head.

'Where are you going in such a rush?' he asked them.

'My yam said, "Leave me alone!"' the farmer said. 'The dog said, "Listen to what the yam says!" The tree said, "Put that branch down!" The branch said, "Do it softly." And the stone said, "Take that thing off me!"'

'And then,' the fisherman continued, 'the fish trap said, "Did he take it off?"'

'That's nothing to get excited about,' the weaver said, 'no reason at all.'

'Oh yes it is,' his bundle of cloth said. 'If it happened to you, you'd run too!'

'Wah!' the weaver shouted. He started running with the other men. They ran to the house of the chief. The chief's servants brought his stool out, and he came and sat on it to listen to their complaints.

'I went out to my garden to dig yams,' the farmer said. 'Then everything began to talk! My yam said, "Leave me alone!" My dog said, "Pay attention to your yam!" The tree said, "Put that branch down!" The branch said, "Do it softly!" And the stone said, "Take it off me!"'

'And my fish trap said, "Well, did he take it off?"' the fisherman said.

'And my cloth said, "You'd run too!"' the weaver said.

The chief listened to them patiently, but he couldn't stop himself from getting angry.

'Now this really is a wild story,' he said at last. 'You'd better all go back to your work before I punish you for disturbing the peace<sup>3</sup>.'

So the men went away and the chief shook his head and mumbled to himself, 'Stupid stories like that upset the community.'

'Fantastic, isn't it?' his stool said. 'Imagine a talking yam!'

(adapted from *Voices from Twentieth-Century Africa*)

*dig up*<sup>1</sup>: take plants out of the ground using a stick

*weeded*<sup>2</sup>: took away unwanted plants

*disturbing the peace*<sup>3</sup>: making people angry or frightened

Match the words and phrases from the text (1–6) with their meanings (A–F). Example: 1E.

1. upset the community

2. cloth

3. yam

4. punish

5. weaver

6. stool

A. a kind of vegetable

B. a small chair with no back and three legs

C. someone who makes cloth

D. something you can make clothes with

E. make people angry or frightened

F. do something unpleasant to a person who has done wrong (e.g. send them to prison)

## Section D

### I'll never forget . . .

Twenty-six-year-old barrister Annette Henry will never forget the romantic evening that ended with a splash<sup>1</sup> . . .

'I was on holiday in Cyprus with my parents and I'd met this nice boy, Pambos. One evening – wanting to give me a special surprise – he took me to this lovely restaurant with tables round a swimming pool. We were gazing into each other's eyes in the moonlight when to my surprise I saw Mum and Dad walk in – they'd picked the same restaurant! I was just about to go over when Dad pulled out a chair for himself, started sitting down . . . and then suddenly he was gone! He hadn't realised in the darkness that the swimming pool was just behind him. "I thought it was a dance floor," he said moments later when he came up. Luckily he was OK, but my romantic evening was dampened<sup>2</sup> too . . .'

(adapted from a letter to *Best* magazine)

*splash*<sup>1</sup>: what happens when something hits water hard

*dampened*<sup>2</sup>: 1) made something a little wet

2) made something less exciting

Choose the best summary.

A. Annette was with a new boyfriend in a restaurant. Her parents came in and her father fell in the swimming pool, which he thought was a dance floor. After that the romance of the evening was gone.

B. Annette's new boyfriend wanted to give her a surprise and invited her parents to the same restaurant. Her father fell in the swimming pool, which was a surprise for everyone. After that the romance of the evening was gone.

## A mirror, an echo

Ved Mehta became blind at the age of three after a serious illness. Although he couldn't see, he tried to do everything that normal children did. His father also wanted Ved to live as normal a life as possible, and he later sent him to a school for blind and partially sighted children. Here Ved describes how he came to understand the idea of a mirror.

Whenever I asked Paran, from the boy's side of the classroom, "What are you doing, Paran?" she would say, "I'm looking into my mirror."

"What do you see in a mirror?"

"My reflection."

"What is that?"

"It's my double."

"But how can it be your double? The mirror is thin and flat."

"You have to be able to see to understand."

I could not work out the puzzle of Paran and the mirror until some time after Abdul and I stumbled onto<sup>1</sup> a heavy stone slab in the cellar. We moved it and discovered that under it was a big, sloping hole. We got down into the hole. I was frightened and wanted to run back, because the tunnel – for that was what it seemed to be – was knee-deep in water, and I could hear things splashing<sup>2</sup> and swimming, scuttling and buzzing. The little noises were picked up and repeated all around me, until it seemed that the whole tunnel was full of ghosts<sup>3</sup>, snakes and wasps.

"I'm getting out of here!" I shouted.

"I'm getting out of here!" they shouted back.

Abdul and I almost fell over each other getting out of the tunnel.

We put the stone back over the hole and didn't go near it for a few days. But one day I told Deoji about the tunnel.

"That's an old, unused sewer," he said. "I don't know what things were swimming down there. But the sound you heard was an echo."

"What is an echo?"

"It's when your voice bounces back from the walls and the ceiling."

"Why doesn't it do that everywhere?"

"You have to be in a tight corner or the voice will escape."

After that, I would often go down to the slab of stone, move it a chink<sup>4</sup>, and shout, "Hello, there!" As I listened to the echo, I felt that, like Paran, I was looking into a mirror.

(from *Vedi* by Ved Mehta)

*stumbled onto*<sup>1</sup>: found by chance

*splashing*<sup>2</sup>: hitting the water noisily

*ghosts*<sup>3</sup>: spirits of dead people

*move it a chink*<sup>4</sup>: move it to make a small opening

To Ved the idea of an echo is similar to the idea of a mirror. He found his echo 'down there' in a hole. Draw lines to the left for words that mean something like *echo* or *mirror*, to the right for words that mean something like *hole*.

*echo/mirror*

*hole*

reflection

double

cellar

tunnel

shout back

sewer

bounce back

## Section E

### Singing in the plane

A 55-year-old British pilot sang throughout the night to keep from falling asleep and freezing to death after his plane crashed into a snow-covered forest in Labrador.

Mr William Loverseed, of Wellington Gardens, Selsey, near Chichester, kept singing "All I Want is a Room Somewhere," over and over.

"It was the most appropriate<sup>1</sup> song I could think of," he said.

Mr Loverseed was ferrying a single-engined Piper Cherokee from the United States to Britain for his employers, South Coast Aviation of Chichester. He ran into unexpected freezing rain which built up ice quickly on the wings and fuselage, forcing the aircraft down.

He said: "I sat there wrestling with the controls<sup>2</sup> until I hit something in the dark, and it was trees."

His right ankle was broken by the impact and, unable to walk to safety, he squeezed into a warmer suit.

"My main occupation the whole night was to keep awake so I would not freeze," he said.

Sixteen hours later a Canadian armed forces helicopter heard signals from his emergency transmitter and picked him up.

(from the *Daily Telegraph*)

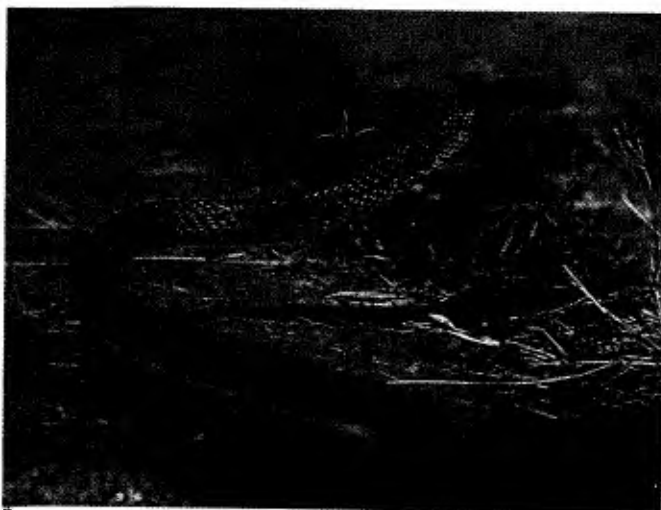
most appropriate<sup>1</sup>: best for that situation

controls<sup>2</sup>: things you use to make a machine stop, turn etc.

Match the words and phrases from the text (1–7) with their meanings (A–G). Example 1C.

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. throughout        | A. water at 0°C    |
| 2. keep from         | B. again and again |
| 3. freezing to death | C. for all of      |
| 4. over and over     | D. crash           |
| 5. ferrying          | E. avoid           |
| 6. ice               | F. dying of cold   |
| 7. impact            | G. taking          |

### Snake!



When he was a young man the writer Roald Dahl went to work in Tanzania (then called Tanganyika). There he saw a fight to the death between Salimu, an African servant, and a deadly snake.

One morning I was shaving myself in the bathroom of our Dar es Salaam house, and gazing out of the window into the garden. I was watching Salimu as he slowly raked<sup>1</sup> the gravel<sup>2</sup> on the front drive. Then I saw the snake. It was six feet long and thick as my arm and quite black. It was a mamba, and there was no doubt that it had seen Salimu and was gliding fast over the gravel straight towards him.

I flung myself toward the open window and yelled in Swahili, "Salimu! Salimu! Beware huge snake! Behind you! Quickly quickly!"

There was not much Salimu could do. He knew it was useless to run because a mamba at full speed could travel as fast as a galloping horse. It would reach him in another five seconds. I leant out of the window and held my breath. Salimu swung round and faced the snake. He crouched very low with one leg behind the other like a runner about to start a hundred yard sprint<sup>3</sup>, and he was holding the long rake out in front of him. He raised it, but no higher than his shoulder, and he stood there for those long four or five seconds absolutely motionless<sup>4</sup>, watching the great black deadly snake as it glided so quickly over the gravel towards him.

He waited until the very last moment when the mamba was not more than five feet away and then *wham!* Salimu struck first. He brought the metal prongs of the rake down hard right on to the middle of the mamba's back and he held the rake there with all his weight, leaning forward now and jumping up and down to put more weight on the fork in an effort to pin the snake to the ground. I saw the blood spurt where the prongs had gone right into the snake's body and then I rushed downstairs. Outside on the drive Salimu was still there pressing with both hands on the rake and the great snake was writhing and twisting<sup>5</sup> and throwing itself about, and I shouted to Salimu in Swahili, "What shall I do?"

"It is all right now, bwana!" he shouted back. "I have broken its back and it cannot travel forward any more! Stand away, bwana! Stand well away and leave it to me!"

Salimu lifted the rake and jumped away and the snake went on writhing and twisting but it was quite unable to travel in any direction. The boy went forward and hit it accurately and very hard on the head with the metal end of the rake and suddenly the snake stopped moving. Salimu let out a great sigh<sup>6</sup> and passed a hand over his forehead. Then he looked at me and smiled.

"Asanti, bwana," he said, "asanti sana," which simply means, "Thank you, bwana. Thank you very much."

(from *Going Solo* by Roald Dahl)

raked<sup>1</sup>: A rake is a tool with a long handle and metal teeth like a comb. The teeth are called 'prongs'. To rake is to make things flat and smooth with a rake.

gravel<sup>2</sup>: small stones

sprint<sup>3</sup>: a short fast race

absolutely motionless<sup>4</sup>: without moving at all

writhing and twisting<sup>5</sup>: turning its body

sigh<sup>6</sup>: the sound you make when you are sad, tired etc., by breathing out loudly

Put these sentences into the right order.

- Salimu hit the snake on the back with his rake.
- Salimu smiled at Roald Dahl and thanked him.
- Roald Dahl ran to help Salimu.
- The snake saw Salimu and started moving towards him.
- Roald Dahl was shaving and watching Salimu at work.
- Salimu hit the snake on the head.
- Roald Dahl saw the snake and shouted to Salimu.



## Queens of chess



Read this with a dictionary – but don't look up more than one or two words in any paragraph.

She's just turned 12, goes to a table tennis club every morning, likes pop music and is good, but not outstanding, at lessons.

An ordinary girl, she would have no particular claim on history except that she plays chess better, by at least a year, than anyone of her age ever has done – including Kasparov, Fischer and Short.

In an age which sometimes seems to produce chess prodigies off the assembly line, Judit Polgar of Hungary and her sisters, Zsafia and Zsuzsa, are changing people's ideas about women chess players.

Judit qualified this year, at 11, for the international master's norm (one step below a grand master) at men's level, a performance which the Kasparovs and Shorts of this world did not achieve until they were 14 or 15. Zsafia, aged 13, is a phenomenon in her own right, having qualified as a grand master (female rank) and also beaten male grand masters.

But they may be remembered most for changing a very old idea – that there are some things that women can never do as well as men.

Klara, their mother, said that when she and her husband, Laszlo, a psychology lecturer, decided to encourage their children to do something well through early specialisation they hadn't thought of chess. That happened when their first child, Zsuzsa, was aged four and discovered some horse-like figures in a box. She dropped her other special interest, mathematics, and hasn't looked back since.

Laszlo has successfully tested his theory that women have been less good than men at chess only because of discrimination through social attitudes and lack of proper facilities and training. The success of the Polgar sisters, helped by a few other girl prodigies, has already dealt with one of the two remaining questions of chess – why women traditionally have been much less good than men. The other is whether computers will ever be able consistently to beat grand masters. They haven't yet, but they are learning fast.

(adapted from an article in the *Guardian* by Victor Keegan)

## Rich man, poor man

Harold Albert, the richest man in the world, lives in the small town of Bird in Kansas, USA. At the age of 14 he began working in his parents' store. There he met his wife, Louie.

**HAROLD:** When we got married, my folks said we could have the running of the store with my sister. So we got married in the church in the morning, then after we'd had something to eat everyone together, then her and me and my sister, we went back to the store and we opened it up and it was business as usual for the rest of the day. And that's how it was, from that day onwards all we did was work.

The only time we shut the store the whole year round was two hours at noon on Christmas Day, so we could eat our Christmas dinner. And people used to come by Christmas afternoon, they'd say "Where were you? I thought something was wrong. I was by an hour ago for some butter and the store was closed."

**LOUIE:** Hard work but we loved it.

**HAROLD:** Every minute.

(Then an oil company came looking for oil<sup>1</sup>.)

**LOUIE:** When the oil came into our lives, that was when all the headaches came too.

**HAROLD:** One day they [the oil company] found they had a hole that had some oil. We had some little piece of land we owned ourselves out that way, and they said they'd do a test drill there too. And that one, the one on our land, before we knew what was happening, it was making not ten barrels a day but fifty barrels a day; every day, bang, bang, bang, just like that. So they sank another one on our land and then another one. Every single one of them produced oil. So that was it, there we were, we had a very big strike on our land.

**LOUIE:** We didn't think that it was going to go on much longer. Some lived like it was going to go on for ever. But we lived just like we'd always lived. Then one day the local newspaper printed a story about it. Letters started to come, cables, long distance phone calls, it was like suddenly everybody in the world knew about it and was begging us for our help.

Sad thing was you know, we reckoned some of the stories people told us about how much they needed money was true. But they just kept on and on coming, and how could you tell? Then one day someone said to us what we should do was think of something else instead to do with our money and throw all the letters in the fire. So that's what we did.

(It was Louie who decided what they could do with their money to help local people.)

LOUIE: "Harold," I said, "I've thought of an idea for something to do with our money, I've just been in the town to that old library, to get me a couple of books to read. You know what? I'm getting real tired of climbing up those library steps<sup>2</sup> every time I go there: it bothers my knees. So why don't we give the town a proper decent library where folk can walk right on in and choose a book for themselves without having to climb all those steps?"

(So Bird now has a new library, but Harold and Louie live in the same small house they've always lived in. Their lives haven't changed and neither have they.)

LOUIE: He's just exactly what he always was, ever since I've first knowed him: a sweet, nice, gentle man.

(from an article by Tony Parker in *The New Statesman*)

*oil*<sup>1</sup>: liquid found under the ground and used to make petrol for cars, fuel for planes etc.

*steps*<sup>2</sup>: you walk up steps to reach a door above the ground, to get onto a bus etc.

Which is the best summary?

- A. Harold and Louie worked very hard in a shop until they were rich enough to buy an oil company. Lots of people asked them for money after that so they built a library. Apart from that their lives haven't changed.
- B. Harold and Louie lived ordinary lives until an oil company found oil on their land. They became very rich and had lots of letters asking for money. They decided it was better to make their own decision, and so they built a new library. Apart from that their lives haven't changed.
- C. Harold and Louie lived like ordinary people, working hard at their jobs. One day an oil company found oil on their land and they became very rich. They gave money to people who asked for it and paid for new steps for the library. Now they have an easy life and live in a big comfortable house.

# Key to Exercises

## Lesson 1

- 1 TOM: Jake, I'd like to *introduce* my friend Alice.  
 ALICE: How *do you do*?  
 JAKE: How *do you do*?  
 ANN: Andy, *this* is Louise.  
 ANDY: Hello, Louise. I'm *glad* to *meet* you.  
 JOE: Hello, Phil. How *are you*?  
 PHIL: Fine, *thanks*, Joe. *Nice* to see you again.  
 CATHY: Janet, *do you know* Susan?  
 JANET: No. How do you do? I've heard so much *about* you.  
 JUDY: *May* I introduce *myself*? My *name's* Judy Gower.  
 RUTH: Hello. I'm Ruth Collins. I'm sorry, I didn't *catch* your name.  
 KATE: Where are you from?  
 MARK: Canada.  
 KATE: *Whereabouts* in Canada?  
 MARK: Toronto.  
 STEVE: *Excuse* me. Are you Liz Bush?  
 LIZ: Yes, that's *right*.

- 2 1c, 2k, 3i, 4b, 5f, 6n, 7a, 8l, 9e, 10h, 11j, 12d, 13m, 14g.

### 3 (Possible questions)

1. What's your name?
2. Where are you from?
3. What do you do? / What is your job?
4. How old are you?
5. How tall are you?
6. Have you got any brothers or sisters?
7. Are you married?
8. Where do you live?
9. Why are you learning English?
10. Can you speak German?
11. What do you do in your spare time?
12. Do you play any sports?
13. How often do you go dancing?

- 4 1. Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday.  
 2. January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.  
 3 to 10. Various possible answers.

## Lesson 2

- 1 1. head 10. hair  
 2. nose 11. eye  
 3. face 12. ear  
 4. neck 13. mouth  
 5. arm 14. beard  
 6. hand 15. shoulder  
 7. finger 16. chest  
 8. leg 17. stomach  
 9. foot 18. knee
- 3 1. Can her little girl dance?  
 2. Is the room expensive?  
 3. Have the police got his name?  
 4. Is the film very long?  
 5. Has his sister got fair hair?  
 6. Has everybody got something to eat?  
 7. Can Sally play the guitar?  
 8. Are the lessons interesting?  
 9. Can Jake run very fast?  
 10. Is her new boyfriend very intelligent?

- 5 1d, 2f, 3e, 4c, 5b, 6a.

- 6 POLLY: Perhaps my nose is too big. Do you think it is? No, perhaps not. I don't know. On the other hand, my hair's nice. Rob says he likes long fair hair. He's sweet. My eyes are a bit small, though. Still, they're pretty. And I know I've got really nice teeth. Look at that smile. I do think my nose is too big, though. Well, perhaps not. I don't know.

## Lesson 3

- 1 1. makes  
 2. doesn't eat, make  
 3. don't smoke  
 4. does (Mark) go  
 5. Do (your parents) like  
 6. do (you) go  
 7. does (your sister) work  
 8. doesn't (usually) have  
 9. does  
 10. don't go  
 11. worries  
 12. watches

- 2 1. I *usually* get up quite early on Saturdays.  
 2. My son *normally* goes to school on Saturday morning.  
 3. My daughter *quite often* goes to a gym club.  
 4. After gym club, we *almost always* go to the bakery for fresh cakes.  
 5. In the afternoon, the children's father *often* takes them somewhere like a museum or a zoo.  
 6. We try to go away *once a month* and visit friends.  
 7. On Sundays, I *hardly ever* get up before ten.  
 8. I *never* go to church, but my husband *sometimes* does.  
 9. We *quite often* have guests for lunch.  
 10. We visit my father and mother *every week*.

### 3 (Possible answers)

Chris washes her hair twice a week.  
 Lucy washes her hair every day.  
 Lucy tidies her room four times a week.  
 Chris hardly ever goes to the hairdresser's.  
 Lucy goes to the hairdresser's quite often.  
 Chris doesn't empty her wastepaper basket very often.  
 Lucy usually empties her wastepaper basket after school.  
 Chris has a bath every three days.  
 Lucy always has a bath in the morning.  
 Chris doesn't change her bed very often.  
 Lucy changes her bed once a week.  
 Chris brushes her teeth once a day.

- 6 RUFUS: Erm, if I have business, er, then I get into my office, which is not far from the bedroom, at anytime after six o'clock in the morning, and then I work there for as long as is necessary. Take er my wife up a cup of tea, followed by a cup of coffee a bit later. Er, we don't usually have breakfast, occasionally we have Saturday lunch, but not very often, and usually a light meal in the evening.

## Lesson 4

- 1 (Possible answers)  
 In Italy people often eat spaghetti.  
 In Britain people often drink tea.  
 In China people often eat rice.  
 In France people often drink wine.

- 2
  1. He doesn't live in a house.
  2. They don't work in an office.
  3. Does it (always) rain there in summer?
  4. She speaks Japanese.
  5. We don't like their children.
  6. Do you play tennis?
  7. He doesn't (often) travel to Africa.
  8. He eats at home.
  9. He doesn't cook for other people.
  10. She doesn't know how to make money.
  11. She likes classical music.
  12. Does he read novels (a lot)?
  13. Does the train run on Fridays?
  14. The price includes tax.
  15. Our cat doesn't eat fish.

## Lesson 5

- 1
 

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. is stopping  | 9. is answering    |
| 2. are coming   | 10. 's saying      |
| 3. is getting   | 11. 's making      |
| 4. are shaking  | 12. is introducing |
| 5. are going    | 13. is looking     |
| 6. are cheering | 14. 's wearing     |
| 7. is talking   | 15. 're turning    |
| 8. 's asking    |                    |

- 3
  1. What is Mrs Andrews writing?
  2. What is that girl eating?
  3. Why are those old men singing?
  4. Why is that car making a funny noise?
  5. What is Mrs Harris trying to say?
  6. Where is your aunt working just now?
  7. Is Dr Parker working today?
  8. Is your TV working all right?

- 5
 

|             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. shirt    | 10. belt    |
| 2. skirt    | 11. boots   |
| 3. trousers | 12. gloves  |
| 4. shoes    | 13. pants   |
| 5. socks    | 14. coat    |
| 6. jacket   | 15. sweater |
| 7. dress    | 16. bra     |
| 8. blouse   | 17. tie     |
| 9. hat      | 18. tights  |

- 6 (Possible answers)
 

... a beautiful afternoon here at Wembley, with the score at Spain 8, England 1. Campbell to Evans, to Murchison; Murchison on to Barker – and Gonzalez intercepts. Very good play there by Gonzalez, by Gonzalez ... That's funny. There's a very strange light in the sky. A *strange red light*. Everybody's looking up. And I think – I think I can see – yes, the light's coming from a strange machine. Not an aeroplane – *it's round*, and very big – very big indeed. It's coming down very low now, and – yes – it's landing. This is amazing. *Now a door's opening in the top*, and a strange thing is getting out. And another. And another. Three strange things are getting out. *They're wearing green suits*, and *they've got – just a moment – yes, six arms and three eyes*. Now they're walking across the field towards the centre. And now – *one of them has taken hold of Evans*, the England striker – yes, he's pulling him over to the spaceship. He's taking him inside. I must find out what's going on. I'm going down to have a word with our visitors.

... Excuse me, sir, er, madam, er, sir – I'm Brian Carter of BBC radio news. I wonder if I might ask you a few questions. Oh – it's taking out a gun. *It's holding it up in its left hand – its top left hand* – it's pointing it at me – Aaaaaaargh!

## Lesson 6

- 2
  1. price
  2. unemployed
  3. worse
  4. are going
  5. fast/slowly
  6. are getting
  7. average
  8. army
  9. is happening
- 3 (Possible questions)
  4. Why is the number of university students going down?
  5. Is your sister's husband getting better?
  6. How fast is the baby's weight going up?
  7. Are the Sunday newspapers getting more expensive?
  8. Is the number of road accidents going down?
  9. Why is the price of air tickets going up?
  10. Is the Atlantic Ocean getting dirtier?

- 4 (Possible answers)
  1. apple – not something to drink
  2. bus – not furniture
  3. fridge – not found in the living room
  4. handsome – usually used to describe men, not women
  5. happy – not used to describe marital status
  6. Thursday – not a month
  7. Japan – not a continent
  8. airport – not a room

## Summary A

- 1
 

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| 1st   | first     |
| 2nd   | second    |
| 3rd   | third     |
| 4th   | fourth    |
| 5th   | fifth     |
| 6th   | sixth     |
| 7th   | seventh   |
| 8th   | eighth    |
| 9th   | ninth     |
| 12th  | twelfth   |
| 20th  | twentieth |
| 100th | hundredth |

- 2 wasn't, I've, she's, she's, I'd, you're, don't, doesn't, can't, I'll
- 3 sees, likes, works, catches, lies, finishes, passes, hurries, sends, goes
- 4 (Possible answers)
  - B. She's having a shower.
  - C. She's talking on the telephone.
  - D. She's driving a car.
  - E. She's reading a newspaper.
  - F. She's cooking dinner.
  - G. She's typing a letter.
  - H. She's trying on a sweater.
  - I. She's playing the piano.
  - J. She's changing a wheel.

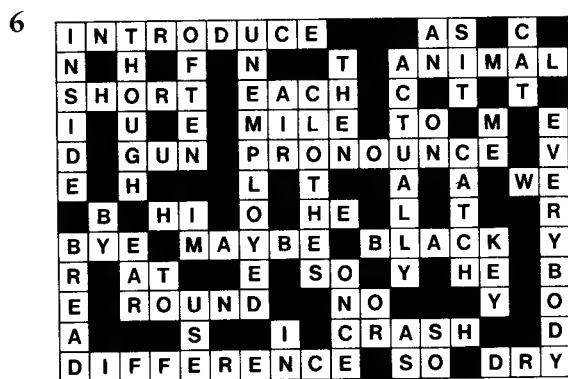
- 5
 

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. girlfriend | 12. laughed       |
| 2. beautiful  | 13. worked        |
| 3. quite      | 14. tired         |
| 4. neither    | 15. each other    |
| 5. nor        | 16. always        |
| 6. long       | 17. forget        |
| 7. fair       | 18. Shakespeare's |
| 8. blue       | 19. person        |
| 9. nose       | 20. her           |
| 10. smile     | 21. is doing      |
| 11. listen    |                   |



## Revision A

- 1
- |        |         |
|--------|---------|
| 1. is  | 7. is   |
| 2. is  | 8. is   |
| 3. is  | 9. is   |
| 4. has | 10. is  |
| 5. has | 11. has |
| 6. is  | 12. is  |
- 2
- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. Nobody      | 11. anywhere        |
| 2. somebody    | 12. Nowhere         |
| 3. somewhere   | 13. anybody         |
| 4. anything    | 14. everywhere      |
| 5. anybody     | 15. everybody       |
| 6. everywhere  | 16. everything      |
| 7. something   | 17. anywhere        |
| 8. nothing     | 18. anybody; nobody |
| 9. Everybody   | 19. anything        |
| 10. everything | 20. Nothing         |
- 3
- Look! It's *raining* again.
  - It always *rains* when I want to go for a walk.
  - 'What *are* you *doing*?' 'I *am* *writing* a letter.'
  - 'What *do* you *do*?' 'I'm an electrical engineer.'
  - 'Do you *like* fish?' 'Not very much.'
  - 'Have you got a cigarette?' 'Sorry, I *don't* *smoke*.'
  - 'What time *do* you *get* up?' 'At seven o'clock, usually.'
  - 'Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?' 'Sorry, I'm *playing* with Bill.'
  - I *work* most Saturday mornings.
  - 'Is your father here?' 'No, he's *shopping*.'
- 4
- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 3. False | 8. False  |
| 4. True  | 9. False  |
| 5. False | 10. False |
| 6. True  | 11. False |
| 7. True  | 12. False |



## Lesson 7

- 1 On June 14th, in Carmel, Indiana, a woman *saw* a large strange bright light moving around in the sky. The woman, Mrs Dora Gabb, 34, *phoned* the police *and spoke* to Patrolman Conrad Brown, *who came* straight to her house to investigate. *When* he arrived there was nothing to be seen, *but* ten minutes later Mrs Gabb's 14-year-old daughter Leslie *ran* into the house screaming. Leslie *said* that she and a girlfriend were riding on motor-bicycles in the woods *when* they *saw* 'a large object, bigger than a house' directly in front of them, low in the sky. It *had* a green top, white sides, a reddish purple tail, and lights of purple, green, gold, red and blue. It *made* no sound. The girls' bicycles *stopped* working, *and* the girls '*felt* strange'. The spaceship *came* down lower, *and stayed* for some time about 100 feet above the ground, not moving. *Then*, with a whistling sound, it *left* at high speed.

- 2
- did you stop
  - did you go
  - did you travel
  - did you take
  - did you arrive
  - Did you see
  - did you do
  - did you watch
  - Did you make
  - Did you telephone
- 3
- I did not go to the mountains last weekend.
  - It did not rain yesterday.
  - I did not enjoy the wine at the restaurant.
  - I did not find the sweater I wanted.
  - My mother did not live in Britain when she was young.
  - She did not fall in love with an Englishman.
  - Her parents did not want her to marry the American.
  - She did not do what her parents wanted.
- 4
- played started showed watched worked
  - hated hoped liked used
  - shopped stopped
  - carried tried worried
- 6
- She worked in a dress shop.
  - It rained almost every day.
  - It's starting early.
  - There's something wrong with it.
  - It smelt strange.
  - It stops quite often.
  - There was no sound.
  - We tried to help them.
  - She puts food out for the birds.
  - My car's using a lot of oil.

## Lesson 8

- 1
- Did you have
  - wanted
  - about
  - usual
  - had
  - talk
  - did you
  - nice
  - corner
  - for
  - when
  - work
  - sounds
  - didn't
- 2
- was cleaning, found
  - rang, was having
  - had, were coming
  - realised, was raining
  - met, were living
  - stopped, was running
  - thought, was washing up
  - went, was telling
  - looked, was coming
- 3
- from, to/until, on
  - on
  - in
  - 
  - after
  - for
  - at
  - 
  - at
  - in, in



- 4 6.30 half past six  
7.25 twenty-five past seven  
2.45 a quarter to three  
4.40 twenty to five  
9.55 five to ten  
10.00 ten o'clock  
1.20 twenty past one  
8.05 five past eight

5 (Possible answer)

Dear Kumiko,

I'm sorry I didn't come and see you today, but things have been awful. I didn't hear my alarm clock, so I got up late. Then, just as I was running out of the house, I fell and hurt my knee. I had to go to the hospital and wait a very long time. Three people who had been in a serious car crash came in while I was waiting and, of course, they had to go straight in before me. The doctor says nothing is broken, but I mustn't stand up much for the next two or three weeks, which is not very easy! This is why I am writing this note, which Peter is delivering for me. I will let you know when I am better and perhaps you can come round for a meal.

I wonder if you could post me the book I lent you in November? I need it for some work I am trying to do while I can't move around much. Do you remember which one I'm talking about? You borrowed it when you were writing that paper for your English class. If you could post it tomorrow or Wednesday I will get it by Friday.

I hope everything is going well and that the person who was making life difficult for you at work has realised how silly she's being.

Love,

Angela

## Lesson 9

- 1 1. has  
2. has  
3. is  
4. was  
5. can  
6. can  
7. does  
8. does  
9. did  
10. did
- 2 1. than  
2. as  
3. as  
4. than  
5. than  
6. as  
7. than  
8. as  
9. than  
10. as, as
- 3 1. so  
2. than  
3. Both  
4. neither  
5. so  
6. as, as  
7. neither  
8. less, than  
9. as, as  
10. neither

- 4 1. which 10. that  
2. Both of them 11. as much as  
3. both 12. from  
4. more 13. like  
5. as 14. more  
6. than 15. he  
7. him 16. better  
8. than 17. as  
9. that

## Lesson 10

### 1 (Possible answers)

1. Maths is less interesting than geography.
2. Maths is more interesting than chemistry.
3. English is not as easy as I expected.
4. English is more useful than Latin.
5. A bicycle is less expensive than a car.
6. A bicycle is not as fast as a car.
7. A bicycle is more expensive than a book.
8. I'm happier than my sister.
9. I'm not as old as Kate.
10. This country is not as big as Fantasia.
11. This country is less populated than Fantasia.
12. This country is smaller than Fantasia.
13. My friend Tom is less intelligent than my brother.
14. The teacher is not as tall as Robin.

- 2 1. Various possible answers.  
2. The USA is richer than the USSR.  
The USSR is bigger than the USA.  
3. A car can go faster than a bicycle.  
A bicycle is cheaper than a car.  
4. Men are usually stronger than women.  
On average, women live longer than men.  
5. Various possible answers.

- 3 The man in B has got longer hair. He is taller and thinner.  
The woman in B has got bigger feet, she is a bit fatter, she has got shorter hair and a shorter skirt.  
The picture is higher in B, the door is wider, and the room is lighter.  
The cat is smaller in B.

- 4 1. better  
2. best  
3. more  
4. most  
5. least  
6. less  
7. fewest  
8. fewer  
9. worst  
10. worse  
11. better  
12. best

- 6 A. It's got four wheels, and usually carries one person, but it can carry two. Its top speed is around six kilometres an hour, and it weighs about 15 kilos. It costs £185.  
B. This vehicle costs about £7,000. It can go at up to 160 kph, and can carry four people in comfort. It weighs 695 kilos when it's empty. There are four wheels.

## Lesson 11

- 1 1. I'd like a shampoo for dry hair, please.  
2. Large, medium or small?  
3. 'How much is that?' '65p.'  
4. Can I look round?  
5. 'Can I help you?' 'I'm being served, thank you.'  
6. Could/Can I have some aspirins, please?  
7. 'Anything else?' 'No, thank you. That's all.'

- 2 1D, 2F, 3A, 4B, 5C, 6E

- 3 a knife – a thing for cutting  
 soap – stuff for washing  
 toothpaste – stuff for cleaning teeth  
 shaving-cream – stuff for shaving  
 a tin-opener – a thing for opening tins
- 5 1. a fur coat, the coat, every woman's dream, this jacket  
 2. Various possible answers.

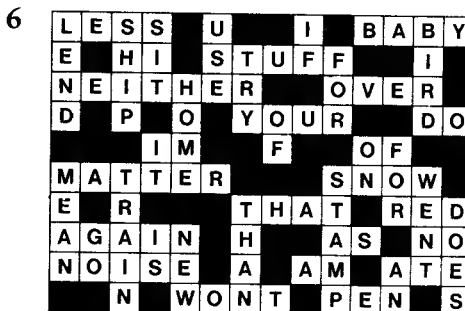
## Lesson 12

- 1 1. matter; Shall  
 2. lend; so; back  
 3. got; afraid  
 4. to come; kind, to; come  
 5. borrow; to borrow; mind  
 6. Could, way; stranger  
 7. change; second, 'll, look
- 2 necessary, letter, visitor, spelling, bigger, older, waiting, sitting, stopped, rubbish, definitely
- 3 1. to eat 6. look  
 2. take 7. to see  
 3. to go 8. carry  
 4. go 9. to start  
 5. lend 10. to see
- 4 1. lost 11. so  
 2. ago 12. After  
 3. walking 13. again  
 4. when 14. except  
 5. started 15. only  
 6. because 16. hit  
 7. that 17. deep  
 8. soon 18. hurt  
 9. called 19. broken  
 10. stay
- 6 ANN: Hello, Kate. What's the matter?  
 KATE: Hello, Ann. Oh dear. I'm going out with Tom this evening, and I haven't got anything to wear.  
 ANN: What about your red dress? That's lovely.  
 KATE: That old thing? No. It makes me look like a sack of potatoes.  
 ANN: Well, why don't you wear something of mine?  
 KATE: Could I really?  
 ANN: Yes, of course. Would you like to?  
 KATE: Well, I'd love to. If you really don't mind.

## Summary B

- 1 1. as  
 2. than  
 3. as  
 4. from  
 5. did  
 6. to  
 7. as  
 8. so  
 9. for  
 10. about  
 11. don't  
 12. Shall; mind
- 2 1. my  
 2. mine  
 3. ours  
 4. Yours  
 5. their  
 6. her  
 7. your, mine

- 3 1. got  
 2. –  
 3. –  
 4. got  
 5. got  
 6. got, –  
 7. got  
 8. got  
 9. –  
 10. –



## Revision B

- 1 (Possible answers)  
 Buildings: ... bank, library, cinema, etc.  
 Vehicles: ... bicycle, train, bus, etc.  
 Clothing: ... trousers, sweater, coat, etc.  
 Parts of the body: ... leg, knee, finger, etc.  
 Furniture: ... chair, bed, wardrobe, etc.  
 Weather: ... sun, wind, snow, etc.  
 Food: ... fruit, eggs, chocolate, etc.  
 Jobs: ... secretary, bank manager, teacher, etc.
- 2 1. a, one  
 2. some  
 3. A, one  
 4. some, a  
 5. a  
 6. a; a, one
- 3 above afterwards anyway arrive aspirin  
century Chinese Christmas difference  
expensive helicopter material recognise  
remember something supermarket together  
unhappy usual village
- 5 MARILYN: I have no brothers and sisters for any comparisons. Erm, and the only person in my family that I resemble is a cousin who is also an only child. Erm, we're both fairly angular, with large noses, and tall, and er, we, we both have the same temperament, which is rather loud.

## Lesson 13

- 1 1. When I was a child, I *never ate* cheese.  
 2. *Have* you ever *lived* alone?  
 3. Thousands of women *worked* in factories during the Second World War.  
 4. *Did* you ever *have* a passport when you were a child?  
 5. Jaime lives in Venezuela; he *has never seen* snow.  
 6. When your mother was at school, *did* she *have* to wear a uniform?  
 7. I *came* to England in 1980.  
 8. I *have lived* here ever since.  
 9. What *did* your father *give* you for your last birthday?  
 10. Shakespeare *never went* to university.  
 11. *Did* Napoleon *ever go* to China?

- 3 2. won't 2. Alan is  
3. She's 3. She is  
4. She's 4. he will  
5. John's 5. will not  
6. I'll 6. She has  
7. I'd 7. We would  
8. hasn't  
9. can't

- 4 1. light 11. chair  
2. window 12. piano  
3. ceiling 13. switch  
4. wall 14. floor  
5. bookcase 15. lamp  
6. plant 16. table  
7. curtain 17. armchair  
8. picture 18. carpet  
9. fireplace 19. door  
10. stereo

- 5 b: I've always wanted to speak Italian, and I've tried year after year after year to teach myself to speak Italian with every book under the sun, even going to evening classes, and I've realised I must be too stupid.  
e: Well, I went to a national park in France in the mountains, and we saw, we saw the smallest trees in the world, which are about three centimetres high and, I thought they were lovely.

- 6 A - 1E, 2B, 3D, 4A, 5C  
B - 1

## Lesson 14

| 1 | INFINITIVE | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|---|------------|------------|-----------------|
|   | become     | became     | become          |
|   | break      | broke      | broken          |
|   | dream      | dreamt     | dreamt          |
|   | drink      | drank      | drunk           |
|   | eat        | ate        | eaten           |
|   | fall       | fell       | fallen          |
|   | feel       | felt       | felt            |
|   | find       | found      | found           |
|   | get        | got        | got             |
|   | hit        | hit        | hit             |
|   | learn      | learnt     | learnt          |
|   | lend       | lent       | lent            |
|   | lie        | lay        | lain            |
|   | meet       | met        | met             |
|   | ring       | rang       | rung            |
|   | rise       | rose       | risen           |
|   | spend      | spent      | spent           |
|   | take       | took       | taken           |
|   | tell       | told       | told            |
|   | wear       | wore       | worn            |
|   | win        | won        | won             |

- 2 (Possible answers)  
They have both got fatter.  
The woman's hair has gone grey.  
The man has started losing his hair. / The man has started going bald.  
They have made a lot of money.  
They have moved to a house with a garden.  
They have bought some beautiful things for their house.  
The man has started smoking a pipe instead of cigarettes.  
The man has got happier.  
The woman has got unhappier.

- 3 1. since 8. since  
2. for 9. for  
3. since 10. since  
4. for 11. since  
5. for 12. for  
6. since 13. since  
7. for 14. for

- 4 A graduate is somebody who has finished university.  
An adult is somebody who has grown up.  
A champion is somebody who has beaten everybody else at a sport.  
A casualty is somebody who has had an accident.  
Ice is water that has frozen.  
A failure is somebody who has not succeeded in life.  
A flood is water that has covered the land.  
An orphan is a child who has lost both parents.

## Lesson 15

- 1 1. a few  
2. too  
3. enough, some  
4. enough, any/enough  
5. a little  
6. a little  
7. How many  
8. any  
9. How much  
10. enough, too much  
11. no

- 2 Group 1:  
*Situation* On the telephone  
*Expressions* I'm afraid he's on the other line.  
Is that Andrew? This is Paul.  
Would you ask her to call me back, please?  
Could you give him a message?

- Group 2:  
*Situation* In a restaurant  
*Expressions* Could I see the wine list?  
Would you like a little more sauce?  
Could I have the bill, please?  
Is everything all right?

- Group 3:  
*Situation* At an airport  
*Expressions* Take-off is delayed for three hours.  
You can only take one piece of hand baggage.  
We have to go through a security check.  
Nothing to declare.

- Group 4:  
*Situation* In a (clothes) shop  
*Expressions* Can I try it on?  
Have you got it in a larger size?  
How much is it?  
Can I look round?

Extra expression: Which platform for Liverpool?  
(Situation: At a station)

- 3 (Possible answers)  
2. It hurts when I breathe.  
3. What time is the next train?  
4. Just cut off a little, please - not too much!  
5. Turn left at the traffic lights, and then take the second right.  
6. Would you like some vegetables, madam?  
7. A kilo of apples, please.  
8. I'd like a double room with bath for two nights, please.

- 4 easy - easily  
careful - carefully  
happy - happily  
tired - tiredly  
complete - completely  
extreme - extremely  
possible - possibly  
soft - softly  
warm - warmly  
beautiful - beautifully  
probable - probably  
nice - nicely

- 5 1. 'Could I speak to Mrs Holmes, please?'  
'Speaking.'  
'Oh, hi, June. This is Mary. How's it going?'  
'Not too bad, Mary. What can I do for you?'
2. 'Haven't you got a room at the back?'  
'I'm sorry, madam. There are no rooms free at the back. But all our windows are double glazed. I'm sure your room will be quiet enough, madam.'
3. 'I'm afraid you've got too much baggage, sir. The allowance is 25 kilos, and you have 45. You'll have to pay £55 excess.'  
'£55!'
4. 'How about 9.30? Is that too early?'  
'No, that's all right. Do you mind if I bring the children along with me?'  
'No, of course not. That's perfectly all right.'
5. 'Keep straight on for 400 yards and then turn right at the supermarket. You can't miss it.'  
'Left at the supermarket. OK, thanks.'

### Lesson 16

- 1 2. He has been running.  
3. She has been painting.  
4. He has been washing up.  
5. She has been playing tennis.  
6. He has been telephoning.  
7. She has been watching TV.  
8. He has been reading.  
9. He has been driving.  
10. They have been dancing.
- 3 1. What have you been talking about?  
2. How long have you been learning English?  
3. Where have you been staying?  
4. Why have you been crying?  
5. The President has been visiting America.  
6. John and I have been playing with the children.
- 5 The heavy rain which has been falling steadily for the past four weeks has caused widespread flooding. The River Fant has just burst its banks in North Milltown, and parts of the town centre are under water. The bad weather has ruined many vegetable crops, and vegetable prices in San Fantastico have been going up steadily for the last ten days. The Minister for Consumer Affairs has just announced that price controls on vegetables and fruit will come into effect next week.

Foreign exchange. The Fantasian grotnik has risen to its highest level against the Outland dollar since last July. The exchange rate is now 1.23 dollars to the grotnik.

The fire which has been burning in Grand South Station for the last three days is now under control. The origin of the fire, which started in the station restaurant on Sunday, is still unknown. Three more firemen were overcome by smoke this morning, and have been taken to hospital.

And now the weather. Heavy rain will continue in most parts of the country, ...

### Lesson 17

- 1 (Possible answers)  
2. ... somebody may steal it.  
3. ... you may lose it.  
4. ... you may have a serious accident or lose your licence.  
5. ... he or she may swallow it.  
6. ... you may start a fire.  
7. ... he or she may fall and hurt himself or herself.

- 2 One of my friends has just returned from a holiday in the USA. He now considers himself an expert on the States. It makes me laugh, but it's not the first time I've seen it. People go to America with a firm idea of what they're going to find there and then they find it. They don't meet many Americans because they never leave their own little group. They go to the tourist traps - Disneyland and Miami Beach, for example - and follow their tour guides around like sheep. They are shown exactly what they want to see, and so they think that America really is exactly like its cinema image.

I think the only way to get to know a country is to go there alone or in a very small group, and stay in a place where there are not very many tourists; then you have a chance of meeting people and finding out what their life is really like. Of course, it is important to try and learn at least a little bit of the language before you go. You won't come back an expert, but you will know more than my friend knows about America.

- 3 2. drive  
3. walk/run  
4. ride  
5. cycle
- 4 depend, enjoy, except, sincere, throughout.

- 5 I couldn't wait to get out of New York; I thought it was an awful place. I mean I liked an awful lot of America: erm, San Francisco; erm, to some extent New Orleans, which is a bit run down, but it's, it's a, a very interesting place; and lots of places in, in America, particularly in the West; but, but New York I found dirty, noisy, unpleasant and unfriendly, I must say.



### Lesson 18

- 1 1. as  
2. a  
3. to, from  
4. Every  
5. be  
6. a  
7. with  
8. for  
9. on  
10. of  
11. at  
12. to

- 2 1. have known  
2. have you lived  
3. I'm seeing Jake  
4. has had  
5. have you been waiting  
6. is starting
- 3 (Possible answers)  
A driver must have a good sense of direction.  
A gardener must like working outside.  
A businessman must be interested in money.  
A photographer must have a camera.  
A secretary must be able to type.  
An engineer must be good at mathematics.  
A vet must like animals.  
A doctor must want to help people.  
A salesperson must like selling.  
A writer must like working alone.  
An actor or actress must know how to change his or her voice.  
A shop assistant must like working with people.  
A primary-school teacher must like children.
- 5 assistant company education interview advertise  
unable essential excellent necessary between several  
possible forward

### Summary C

- 1 2. He has been eating.  
3. He has been walking.  
4. He has been shaving or washing his face.  
5. He has been playing football.  
6. She has been shopping.  
7. He has been flying.  
8. She has been playing the piano.
- 2 1. my; mine  
2. theirs  
3. our  
4. Hers  
5. his; his  
6. your; yours  
7. her, their, ours
- 3 (Possible answers)  
1. bicycle – the others are motorised.  
2. train – the others cannot carry large numbers of people.  
3. plane – the others cannot fly.  
4. walk – you don't use a vehicle for this.  
5. Hawaii – the others are cities.  
6. river – you live in the others.  
7. swimming pool – the others occur naturally.  
8. library – you buy from the others but you borrow from a library.
- 4 agriculture apply assistant average avoid  
become colony company continue  
economy education election essential  
excellent experience faithfully family  
government hospital improve interview  
necessary percentage population  
qualification salary sincerely traffic  
unemployment vegetable

### Revision C

- 1 Argentina – Buenos Aires  
Czechoslovakia – Prague  
Denmark – Copenhagen  
Egypt – Cairo  
Germany – Berlin  
Greece – Athens  
India – Delhi  
Indonesia – Djakarta  
Iran – Tehran  
Ireland – Dublin  
Japan – Tokyo  
The Netherlands – Amsterdam  
Nigeria – Lagos  
People's Republic of China – Beijing  
Poland – Warsaw  
Portugal – Lisbon  
Switzerland – Berne  
Taiwan – Taipei  
Thailand – Bangkok  
Turkey – Ankara  
The USSR – Moscow  
Yugoslavia – Belgrade  
Zaire – Kinshasa

- 2 1. can  
2. cannot  
3. may  
4. will not  
5. must  
6. will not  
7. will  
8. may not  
9. can  
10. must

| 3 | INFINITIVE | PAST TENSE     | PAST PARTICIPLE  |
|---|------------|----------------|------------------|
|   | bring      | <i>brought</i> | <i>brought</i>   |
|   | buy        | <i>bought</i>  | <i>bought</i>    |
|   | choose     | <i>chose</i>   | <i>chosen</i>    |
|   | come       | <i>came</i>    | <i>come</i>      |
|   | fly        | <i>flew</i>    | <i>flown</i>     |
|   | forget     | <i>forgot</i>  | <i>forgotten</i> |
|   | hold       | <i>held</i>    | <i>held</i>      |
|   | leave      | <i>left</i>    | <i>left</i>      |
|   | lose       | <i>lost</i>    | <i>lost</i>      |
|   | mean       | <i>meant</i>   | <i>meant</i>     |
|   | run        | <i>ran</i>     | <i>run</i>       |
|   | sell       | <i>sold</i>    | <i>sold</i>      |
|   | sing       | <i>sang</i>    | <i>sung</i>      |
|   | swim       | <i>swam</i>    | <i>swum</i>      |
|   | wake       | <i>woke</i>    | <i>woken</i>     |

6

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| S | H | O | R | T |   | I |   | O | N | E |   |   |   |   |   |
| T |   |   |   |   | S | I | N | C | E | R | E | L | Y |   |   |
| A |   | O |   | S | O |   |   |   |   | W | E |   |   |   |   |
| F | A | I | T | H | F | U | L | L | Y |   | C | U | P |   |   |
| F |   | L |   | A | T |   | D |   | C | U | T |   | O |   |   |
|   |   |   |   | L |   | I | S |   | A |   | I |   | S |   |   |
|   |   | Q | U | A | L | I | F | I | C | A | T | I | O | N | S |
| B |   | N |   |   |   | X |   |   |   | N |   | I |   |   |   |
| L | I | C | E | N | C | E |   | O | L | D |   | S |   | B |   |
| U |   | L |   | E |   | I |   | A |   | D |   |   | L |   |   |
| E | Y | E |   |   | E | D | U | C | A | T | I | O | N |   | E |
|   |   |   |   |   | D | O | N | E |   | E |   | G | O | T |   |



## Lesson 19

- 1 If the score in your game is 40–15, you are probably playing tennis.  
If today is your golden wedding anniversary, you have been married for 50 years.  
If your great-grandparents all had blue eyes, you have blue eyes.  
If you travel from England to Scotland, you do not go through customs and immigration.  
If last year was a leap year (with 366 days), next year won't be a leap year.  
If you can speak French, you can understand at least a bit of Italian.  
If you can see pink elephants, perhaps you need to see a doctor.
- 4
 

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. handbag         | 9. bucket     |
| 2. shopping bag    | 10. saucepan  |
| 3. cup             | 11. envelope  |
| 4. saucer          | 12. tube      |
| 5. coffee pot      | 13. bowl/dish |
| 6. mug             | 14. plate     |
| 7. bath            | 15. jug       |
| 8. (cereal) packet | 16. box       |

## Lesson 20

- 1 (Possible answers)
  1. There's going to be a crash.
  2. She's going to open the door.
  3. He's going to cook something to eat.
  4. She's going to phone a friend.
  5. They're going to see a film.
  6. He's going to rob the bank.
  7. The ball's going to break the window.
  8. It's going to rain.
- 2
  1. She said (that) it would probably rain.
  2. She said (that) she was going to see Anna.
  3. She said (that) it was late.
  4. She said (that) Jack was going to change his job.
  5. She said (that) she wouldn't be at school on Friday.
  6. She said (that) there would be a meeting next Tuesday.
  7. She said (that) Alice and Rita were going to buy a car.
  8. She said (that) she would always love me.
  9. She said (that) I would forget her.
  10. She said (that) prices were going to go up next week.
- 3
  1. I'm, you're, he's, she's, it's, we're, they're
  2. I'm not, you're not / you aren't, she's not / she isn't
  3. there's, there isn't
  4. don't, doesn't
  5. didn't
  6. haven't, hasn't
  7. I'll, you'll, he'll, it'll, we'll, John'll
  8. can't
  9. I'd
  10. shouldn't
- 4
 

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. have      | 11. knife      |
| 2. each      | 12. newspapers |
| 3. take      | 13. sun        |
| 4. fruit     | 14. first      |
| 5. rope      | 15. aid        |
| 6. take      | 16. kit        |
| 7. kilograms | 17. pairs      |
| 8. water     | 18. sunglasses |
| 9. each      | 19. compass    |
| 10. matches  | 20. each       |

## Lesson 21

- | INFINITIVE | PAST TENSE   | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| break      | <i>broke</i> | <i>broken</i>   |
| burn       | burnt        | <i>burnt</i>    |
| draw       | <i>drew</i>  | drawn           |
| fall       | <i>fell</i>  | <i>fallen</i>   |
| get        | got          | got             |
| hit        | <i>hit</i>   | hit             |
| hurt       | <i>hurt</i>  | <i>hurt</i>     |
| mean       | meant        | <i>meant</i>    |
| see        | <i>saw</i>   | <i>seen</i>     |
| shut       | shut         | <i>shut</i>     |
| steal      | <i>stole</i> | stolen          |
| throw      | <i>threw</i> | <i>thrown</i>   |
| win        | won          | won             |
- 2
 

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. If   | 7. If    |
| 2. when | 8. if    |
| 3. when | 9. When  |
| 4. If   | 10. if   |
| 5. If   | 11. when |
| 6. when | 12. when |
  - 3
    2. I *will* phone you when I *arrive*.
    3. If it *is* a warm night, we *will have* the party in the garden.
    4. Do you think you *will find* a job when you *leave* school?
    5. If you *are* hungry, tell me and I *will get* you something to eat.
    6. If you *give* me the keys, I *will bring* your car round to the front door.
    7. When I *have* time, I *will buy* myself some new clothes.
    8. If it *rains* at the weekend, we *will stay* at home.
    9. If Mother *comes* on Sunday, I *will make* a lemon meringue pie.
    10. When I *stop* work, I *will travel* round the world.
  - 4
    1. cow
    2. sheep
    3. dog
    4. kangaroo
    5. giraffe
    6. horse
    7. pig
    8. lion
    9. tiger
    10. elephant
    11. whale
    12. eagle/bird
    13. bear
    14. cat
    15. fly
    16. spider
    17. frog
    18. snake
    19. fish
  - 5
    1. False – he orders three bottles.
    2. True.
    3. False – we don't know what colour her bag is.
    4. False – he finds a revolver.
    5. True.
    6. True.
    7. False – he takes £20,000.
    8. False – he sees another beautiful girl.
  - 6
 

|             |
|-------------|
| great – 4   |
| count – 2   |
| about – 1   |
| odd – 2     |
| custom – 1  |
| anxious – 3 |

## Lesson 22

- 1
1. She's easy to work for.
  2. He's very difficult to talk to.
  3. He's nice to work with.
  4. She's easy to live with.
  5. This music is pleasant to listen to.  
OR: This is pleasant music to listen to.
  6. She's easy to get on with.
  7. It's a pleasure to work with her.
- 2 (Possible answers)
1. problem
  2. get
  3. to talk
  4. to hear
  5. realise/know
  6. changed
  7. glad to hear
  8. gets
  9. very easy
  10. stand
- 3
- She said (that) she was very fair.  
He said (that) she didn't like to hear about her mistakes.  
She said (that) she told interesting stories.  
He said (that) she didn't always tell true stories.  
She said (that) she listened very well.  
He said (that) she told everyone else everything she heard.  
She said (that) Dave wasn't being fair.  
He said (that) he didn't like people who were cleverer than him.
- 6
- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. woke up / came | 8. could      |
| 2. saw            | 9. went       |
| 3. knew           | 10. told      |
| 4. had            | 11. heard/saw |
| 5. put            | 12. began     |
| 6. said, had      | 13. made      |
| 7. came           | 14. lost      |

## Lesson 23

- 1
- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. were       | 9. were         |
| 2. would know | 10. would       |
| 3. were       | 11. do          |
| 4. would read | 12. had         |
| 5. would be   | 13. would phone |
| 6. took       | 14. would be    |
| 7. looked     | 15. knew/had    |
| 8. would      |                 |
- 2
- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. would  | 5. should |
| 2. should | 6. would  |
| 3. Would  | 7. should |
| 4. would  | 8. would  |

- 3 (Possible answers)
- The woman's umbrella is inside out.  
The other woman's hat is on upside down.  
The first man's shirt, jacket and tie are on back to front.  
The door is upside down.  
The hatstand is upside down.  
The arrow to the toilets is back to front.  
The toilets sign is upside down.  
The door to the toilets has no handle.  
The vase of flowers is upside down.  
The mugs are upside down.  
The salt and pepper shakers are upside down.  
The sandwiches are on the floor.  
The saucer is on top of the cup instead of under.  
The word 'menu' is written back to front.  
The newspaper is upside down.  
The briefcase is upside down.

- 4
- A: If I were you, I'd turn it *inside out*.  
B: Well, I think I'll try it this way first.  
A: I mean, —  
C: Hello. I wouldn't do it like that if I were you.  
B: Wouldn't you?  
C: No, I think you should turn it *inside out*.  
B: Oh, really? I'll think about it.  
D: Hi. Why don't you turn it sideways?  
B: You think so?  
D: Oh, yes, and remember to *put* the wheels *on* first.  
B: *Put* the wheels *on*?  
E: Hello. You've got the seat *upside down*.  
A: You should put it *down* on the *floor*, you know.  
B: Well, I —  
E: I think it would be much better if he turned it *inside out*, don't you?  
A: That's just what I said.  
E: You shouldn't do it with the wheels *off*.  
C: Don't forget to put it on the *floor*.  
E: If you moved it *forwards* a bit, —  
D: If you *put* the wheels *on* first, —  
C: If you turned it *inside out*, it would be much easier.  
A: If I were you, I'd go back to the beginning and start again.  
E: I'll help you.  
A: I'll help you, too.  
C: We'll all help him.  
B: It's quite all right. I can do it by myself, thank you very much.  
E: No, it's no trouble.  
A: Come on, everybody.
- 5
- |              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. Thanks    | 11. I were you    |
| 2. Sorry     | 12. weeks         |
| 3. haven't   | 13. by yourself   |
| 4. been      | 14. calmly        |
| 5. to hear   | 15. Why don't you |
| 6. been      | 16. sure          |
| 7. should    | 17. soon          |
| 8. both      | 18. forget        |
| 9. be better | 19. love          |
| 10. wrong    |                   |

## Lesson 24

- 1 (Possible answers)
1. This
  2. How/What
  3. fine
  4. free
  5. bit
  6. having dinner with
  7. thought you said
  8. depends
  9. What
  10. later
  11. place
  12. a lot
  13. See you (on Sunday)
- 2
1. In
  2. on
  3. until
  4. in
  5. before
  6. in
  7. on
  8. on
  9. until
  10. until
  11. at

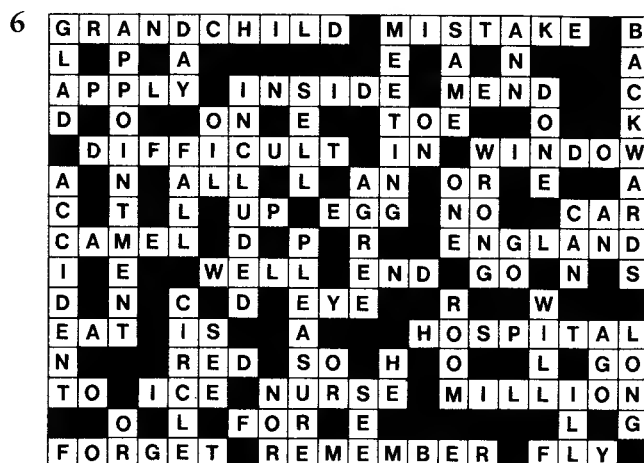
- 4
1. camera
  2. kettle
  3. toothbrush
  4. traffic lights
  5. video camera
  6. calculator
  7. lamp
  8. typewriter
  9. helicopter
  10. bicycle
  11. computer / word processor
  12. cassette player
  13. cooker
- 5
- 'Parkhurst 7298.'
- 'Hello, Paul.'
- 'Hello. Who's that?'
- 'This is Audrey. Are you free today?'
- 'It depends. What time?'
- 'In the afternoon. My mother's coming down, and I'd like you to meet her. About half past four?'
- 'Half past four's difficult.'
- 'What about earlier? Say, two?'
- 'Yes, OK. I'll come round at two. Your place?'
- 'My place.'
- 'OK. See you in a couple of hours.'
- 'See you then. Bye.'
- 'Bye.'

### Summary D

- 1
- about accident animal appointment beginning  
certainly complicated depend difficult future  
gardening grandchild hospital million parent  
practise probably religion until vegetarian
- 2 (Possible answers)
2. When he looks behind the door, he'll see all the toys.
  3. When they drive away, the tins will make a terrible noise.
  4. When anyone sits on the chair, it will break and they'll fall on the floor.
  5. When he falls down, he won't hurt himself.
  6. When the postman goes in, the dog will probably bite him.
- 3
- apply – applied  
cry – cried  
explain – explained  
fit – fitted  
fix – fixed  
guess – guessed  
happen – happened  
hate – hated  
mend – mended  
need – needed  
play – played  
start – started  
stay – stayed  
stop – stopped  
wait – waited
- 4
1. with
  2. off
  3. at
  4. over
  5. into
  6. through
  7. on, in
  8. of
  9. to
  10. from
  11. under

### Revision D

- 1
1. won't do
  2. know
  3. see
  4. will be
  5. will happen
  6. get
  7. will look after
  8. will reserve
  9. finish
  10. go
- 2
1. when
  2. until
  3. When
  4. until
  5. until
  6. when
  7. When
  8. until
  9. until
  10. when
- 3 (Possible answers)
2. shoe – the others are all round
  3. fish – the others live on land
  4. both – the others refer to location
  5. friend – the others are members of your family
  6. heavy – the others are colours
  7. wear – the others are items of clothing
  8. office – the others are people
  9. film – the others are printed or written on paper
  10. armchair – the others are vehicles



### Lesson 25

- 1
1. paid
  2. made
  3. produced
  4. mined
  5. grown
  6. built
  7. taught
  8. seen
  9. given
  10. sold
- 2
2. –
  3. the
  4. the, – , –
  5. the
  6. – , –
  7. The, the
  8. –
  9. the, the

- 3 (Possible answers)  
 Japanese is spoken in Japan, Korea, ...  
 Chinese is spoken in China, Singapore, Malaysia, ...  
 Arabic is spoken in Saudi Arabia, Egypt, Kuwait, ...  
 German is spoken in Germany, Austria, Switzerland, ...  
 English is spoken in Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia, ...  
 Spanish is spoken in Spain, Venezuela, Argentina, ...  
 Russian is spoken in Russia, the Ukraine, Georgia, ...  
 Greek is spoken in Greece, Cyprus, ...

4 (Possible answer)

1. imports
2. from
3. and
4. from
5. which
6. mainly
7. in
8. is
9. the
10. produced
11. are
12. mainly

- 5
1. Paper was invented by the Greeks.
  2. It was invented in the first century.
  3. The British learnt how to make paper in the 18th century.
  4. Paper-making is an unimportant industry in Britain.
  5. British paper is imported from South Africa.
  6. All British paper is made from wood grown in Great Britain.

## Lesson 26

- 1
1. going, to go
  2. to find out
  3. told
  4. standing
  5. announced, going
  6. going, broken
  7. having, closed
  8. to be
  9. found, locked
  10. to say

- 2
1. by
  2. by
  3. with
  4. by
  5. by
  6. with
  7. with
  8. by

- 3
1. built
  2. used
  3. damaged
  4. repaired
  5. added
  6. burnt down
  7. rebuilt

(Possible answer)

Stroud House was built by James Stroud in 1676. During the 18th century it was used as a farmhouse, until it was damaged by fire in 1776. It was then bought by Andrew Scott; it was repaired and a new floor was added. But it was badly damaged in World War II. After the war it was bought by The National Trust and completely rebuilt. Stroud House was opened to the public in 1968.

- 4
1. have a wonderful time
  2. have breakfast
  3. have a baby
  4. have a drink
  5. have a talk
  6. have a dream
  7. have a shower
  8. have a look
  9. are having
  10. was having
  11. 'm going to have / 'm having
  12. have

| 5 | INFINITIVE | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|---|------------|------------|-----------------|
|   | speak      | spoke      | spoken          |
|   | spell      | spelt      | spelt           |
|   | spend      | spent      | spent           |
|   | stand      | stood      | stood           |
|   | swim       | swam       | swum            |
|   | take       | took       | taken           |
|   | teach      | taught     | taught          |
|   | tell       | told       | told            |
|   | think      | thought    | thought         |
|   | understand | understood | understood      |
|   | wear       | wore       | worn            |
|   | win        | won        | won             |
|   | write      | wrote      | written         |

- 6 Solution: James won.

## Lesson 27

- 1
1. will
  2. might
  3. can't
  4. might
  5. must
  6. might, might
  7. must
  8. can't

- 2 All the statements are true.

3 (Possible answers)

1. Virginia Woolf said that the eyes of others were our prisons and their thoughts were our cages.
2. Texas Guinan said that success had killed more men than bullets.
3. Eleanor Roosevelt said that no one could make you feel inferior without your consent.
4. Mae West said that, between two evils, she always picked the one she had never tried before. She also said that too much of a good thing could be wonderful.
5. Dodie Smith said that noble deeds and hot baths were the best cures for depression.
6. Adele Davis said that thousands upon thousands of persons had studied disease and almost no one had studied health.
7. Mother Teresa said that their work brought people face to face with love.

- 4
1. Janet asked Fred what he did.
  2. Janet asked Fred where he worked.
  3. Janet asked Fred if he was based in London.
  4. Janet asked Fred if she really had an interesting face.
  5. Fred asked Janet if she was an actress.
  6. Janet asked Fred if he had a Boeing 747.
  7. Fred asked Janet what her father did.

- 5 'Hello, then. What's your name?'  
 'Oh, er, Janet. Janet Parker.'  
 'Oh, yes? I'm Frederick. Frederick Getty Onassis. But my friends call me Fred.'  
 'Oh. What do you do, er, Fred?'  
 'Oh, I'm a photographer. I photograph famous people: film stars, pop singers, people like that.'  
 'Oh, yes? Where do you work, then? Are you based in London?'  
 'Oh, no. I live in Paris. Paris and California. But I travel all over the world.'  
 'Oh, yes?'  
 'I've just got back from Washington. I've been photographing the President for *Time* magazine.'

## Lesson 28

- 1 1. My parents *both* work in the same bank.  
 2. When I arrived, they were *both* cooking.  
 3. You *both* look like your mother.  
 4. Our children are *both* tall and slim.  
 5. We have *both* been in hospital recently.  
 6. The cars *both* cost a fortune.  
 (OR: *Both* the cars cost a fortune.)  
 7. Alice and Judy can *both* play chess.  
 (OR: *Both* Alice and Judy can play chess.)  
 8. I think those trees are *both* going to die.  
 (OR: I think *both* those trees are going to die.)

- 2 boys      ways      coaches  
 watches    lorries    differences  
 ladies      reasons   parties  
 boxes      bodies    tomatoes  
 guns       valleys   economies  
 days       switches   churches  
 potatoes  
 children    people    women  
 wives      knives    feet

- 3 (Possible answers)  
 Perfume is made in France, Italy and America.  
 Cars are made in Britain, the USA, Sweden, Spain and France.  
 Cameras are made in Japan, Taiwan and Korea.  
 Calculators are made in Japan, Taiwan and Germany.  
 Cheese is made in France, Switzerland, Italy and Britain.  
 Shoes are made in Italy, Portugal, France and Britain.

- 4 slimmer    shorter    profession   qualifications  
 attractive   fair-haired   education   programme  
 worried    depressed   happened   showed  
 nervous    different   wallet       sitting

- 5 Yesterday the doorbell rang while I was having breakfast. As I was going to answer it, I fell over a pile of books in the hall. By the time I got to the door, there was no one there – but the postman was getting back into his van a few houses away. I ran after him, but he didn't hear me and drove off. So I went back home. When I got there, the door was shut, and I realised that I didn't have my key. My son was in the house, and so I rang the bell, but he didn't answer: he was listening to music and didn't hear the bell. I remembered that the kitchen window was open, so I went round to the back to try and get in that way. While I was climbing in the window, the electricity man arrived to read the meter, and I had to explain the situation to him. I still don't know if he believed me. Anyway, I got in, only to find that the cats were eating my breakfast. Then the doorbell rang.

- 6 Ruth is a short black woman in her early twenties. She is quite plain, but has a very interesting face. She has short, curly, black hair and big brown eyes. Her nose is small, her face is round and her skin is very dark. She is slim and athletic-looking. She dresses casually and looks friendly and enthusiastic.

(Possible answer)

Deborah is in her late twenties or early thirties. She is very tall, with long fair hair and blue eyes. She's pretty, with a long face and a longish nose. She's slim and dresses like a businesswoman. She looks intelligent but rather depressed.

## Lesson 29

| 1 SINGULAR | PLURAL    | UNCOUNTABLE |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| COUNTABLE  | COUNTABLE |             |
| eye        | ears      | hair        |
| watch      | glasses   | jeans       |
| apple      | feet      | wool        |
| foot       | pounds    | beer        |
| bank       |           | snow        |
|            |           | money       |

- 2 (Possible answers)

1. Because a stone's too hard.  
 OR: Because a knife isn't sharp enough.  
 2. Because a house is too high.  
 OR: Because you can't jump high enough.  
 3. Because a fridge is too heavy.  
 OR: Because I'm not strong enough.  
 4. Because it's too cold at the North Pole.  
 OR: Because the North Pole's not hot enough.  
 5. Because a horse is too big.  
 OR: Because my bath isn't big enough.  
 6. Because my heart's beating too quietly.  
 OR: Because my ears aren't sensitive enough.  
 7. Because boiling water's too hot.  
 OR: Because boiling water is not cool enough.  
 8. Because it's too dark.  
 OR: Because it's not light enough.  
 9. Because the Mississippi is too wide.  
 OR: Because I can't jump far enough.  
 10. Because it's too hard.  
 OR: Because it's not soft enough.  
 11. Because I'm too tall.  
 OR: Because it's not high enough.

- 4 business cotton dictionary direct discover education  
 information invent liquid metal narrow necessary  
 photograph photographer profession programme  
 qualification something surprised synthetic useful  
 wonderful

- 6 The speaker was thinking of a glass.

## Lesson 30

- 4 (Possible answer)

14 September 1990

Dear Kevin,

I'm writing to ask you for some advice. Barbara and I are getting very worried about Richard. He has been staying out very late at night and is always too tired to do well in school. Last week he was out till one in the morning on Tuesday and Wednesday. He won't listen to anything we say. We have tried not giving him pocket money but it doesn't do any good. I am afraid that now he is sure that we are just trying to make him do what we want to show him who's boss, but the truth is, we are worried about his future.



I know you and Simon had a rough patch when he was sixteen or so. What did you do about it? How did you handle it? Any advice you could give us would be very welcome; we have run out of ideas ourselves.

Sorry to write such a short letter but I want to get this in the post today. Give my love to Angela and the kids.

Yours,

Tony

## Summary E

### 1 (Possible answers)

- I think the glass is made of glass.
- I think the clock is made of metal and glass.
- I think the coin is made of silver.
- I think the vase is made of porcelain.
- I think the ship is made of wood.
- I think the sweater is made of wool.
- I think the boot is made of leather.
- I think the handbag is made of plastic.
- I think the playing cards are made of paper.
- I think the statue is made of marble.
- I think the tyre is made of rubber.
- I think the telephone is made of plastic.
- I think the sofa is made of leather.
- I think the chair is made of wood.
- I think the cinema is made of bricks, glass and metal.

1. her
2. myself
3. somebody else; me
4. myself
5. her; herself
6. yourself
7. herself
8. himself
9. her, him

### 3 (Possible answers)

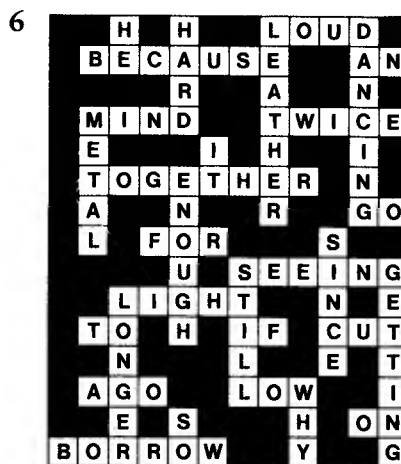
- |                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| disco music – loud                | a mouse – quiet/small |
| helium – light                    | Superman – strong     |
| lightning – fast                  | a tortoise – slow     |
| a whale – big                     | an atom – small       |
| lead – heavy                      | butter – soft         |
| the Amazon – wide                 |                       |
| the Bering Strait – narrow        |                       |
| a Californian redwood tree – tall |                       |

## Revision E

- 1 A match is a thing that you light a cigarette with.  
A cinema is a place where you can watch films.  
A chair is a piece of furniture for sitting on.  
Breakfast is a meal that you eat in the morning.  
Water is something you wash yourself in.  
Climbing is getting from a lower place to a higher place.
- 2
  1. It's animal, vegetable and mineral – if you consider the leather, the thread and the metal clasp.
  2. No, it isn't.
  3. No, you can't.
  4. No, it isn't.
  5. Yes, it is.
  6. Yes, sometimes you can.
  7. No, it isn't.
  8. Yes, sometimes it is.
  9. Yes, usually it is.
  10. Yes, it is.
  11. Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
  12. Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
  13. Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
  14. Yes, you can.
  15. No, it isn't.
  16. Yes, you can.

- 3 A: (*Richard*) I hope not, 'cause I talk to myself all the time, and er, I'm aware of it. 'Specially when I was in London, I used to talk to myself all the time, and you see a lot of people talking to themselves a lot. No, I don't think there's any-, anything wrong. Sometimes I think you, you rationalise things out for yourself by talking to yourself. You sort things out for yourself. (*Susan*: Mm.) Erm, other times it's erm, it's a problem not having somebody to talk to.

- 4 d, b, e, a, c



## Lesson 31

- 1
  1. I brush my teeth before I undress.
  2. I put the light out after I get into bed.
  3. I get up as soon as I wake up.
  4. My life changed after I met Jane.
  5. She was very unhappy until she left school.
  6. I thought I was very ill before I went to see the doctor.
  7. I telephoned Kate before I went to see her.
  8. Everything got better after I went to America.
- 2
  2. First I left school. Then I made a lot of new friends.
  3. First I cleaned my shoes. Then I went out.
  4. First you came to see me. Then I felt fine.
  5. First it started raining. Then Andrew got to London.
  6. First it got dark. Then Paul went out for a walk.
  7. First I looked in the mirror. Then I took off the handbrake.
  8. First your mother telephoned. Then your father came to see me.
- 3
  1. yet
  2. still
  3. already
  4. yet
  5. already
  6. still
  7. yet
  8. yet
  9. already
- 4
 

Switchboard: Cooper and Johnson. Can I help you?  
Commercial Traveller: Hello. This is Henry Douglas.  
Could I speak to Mr Cooper, please?  
Switchboard: One moment. I'll put you through.  
Boss: Arthur Cooper here.  
CT: Hello, sir. This is Douglas.  
Boss: Oh, hello, Henry. How's it going? Finished yet?  
CT: No, not yet, sir. It's going rather slowly, I'm afraid.  
The meeting with Fisher and Dennis took half the morning. Those people are so slow!

- 5 1. so
2. so
3. such
4. so
5. such
6. such
7. so
8. such

## Lesson 32

- 1
 

|       |                |              |
|-------|----------------|--------------|
| 2     | two            | second       |
| 3     | three          | third        |
| 4     | four           | fourth       |
| 5     | five           | fifth        |
| 6     | six            | sixth        |
| 7     | seven          | seventh      |
| 8     | eight          | eighth       |
| 9     | nine           | ninth        |
| 10    | ten            | tenth        |
| 11    | eleven         | eleventh     |
| 12    | twelve         | twelfth      |
| 13    | thirteen       | thirteenth   |
| 14    | fourteen       | fourteenth   |
| 15    | fifteen        | fifteenth    |
| 16    | sixteen        | sixteenth    |
| 17    | seventeen      | seventeenth  |
| 18    | eighteen       | eighteenth   |
| 19    | nineteen       | nineteenth   |
| 20    | twenty         | twentieth    |
| 21    | twenty-one     | twenty-first |
| 30    | thirty         | thirtieth    |
| 100   | a/one hundred  | hundredth    |
| 1,000 | a/one thousand | thousandth   |

- 2
 

|            |             |           |            |
|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| afternoon  | cinema      | difficult | directions |
| examine    | family      | goodbye   | language   |
| realise    | recognition | repair    | reserve    |
| restaurant | silence     | someone   | suitcase   |

- 3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.

Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday.

1. Friday
2. Sunday
3. Sunday

4 to 7. (Various possible answers)

- 4 I was walking down the street one day  
Looking at the shops  
When someone asked me if I knew the way.  
I gave the girl directions  
And then saw who it was.  
I couldn't think of anything to say.  
  
I hadn't seen her for a very long time  
Since the day we said goodbye.  
She hadn't changed,  
She still looked young and shy.  
I thought perhaps I'd changed so much  
She didn't realise it was me,  
Then I saw the recognition in her eye.  
  
We stood in silence for a while,  
Then I led her to a bar.  
I felt as if I was walking with a ghost.  
We drank and began to talk  
And then her eyes met mine.  
Her eyes had always shown her feelings most.

We talked about the good old days  
About family and friends  
About the hopes we'd shared before it all went wrong.  
She seemed quite pleased to see me  
So I ordered two more drinks  
But when I got back to the table she had gone.  
I hadn't seen her for a very long time *etc.*

- 5
  1. were
  2. was
  3. was
  4. had
  5. had
  6. had
  7. but
  8. was
  9. and
  10. was
  11. shall
  12. have
  13. has

## Lesson 33

- 1
  2. ..., isn't she?
  3. ..., does he?
  4. ..., isn't it?
  5. ..., have you?
  6. ..., won't we?
  7. ..., will you?
  8. ..., wasn't she?
  9. ..., can she?
  10. ..., don't you?
  11. ..., is she?
  12. ..., wouldn't you?
  13. ..., was he?
  14. ..., didn't you?
  15. ..., does she?

- 2 Sign C tells you to stop.  
Sign D tells you not to turn right.  
Sign E tells you not to overtake.  
Sign F tells you to turn right.  
Sign G tells you not to drive at more than 30 miles per hour.  
Sign H tells you not to turn left.  
Sign I tells you not to ride your bicycle.  
Sign J tells you to be careful.

- 3
 

| Words stressed on the first syllable | Words stressed on the second syllable |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| afterwards                           | about                                 |
| carpet                               | afraid                                |
| difference                           | already                               |
| everybody                            | directions                            |
| happen                               | exactly                               |
| language                             | forget                                |
| manager                              | invite                                |
| promise                              | remember                              |
| restaurant                           | repair                                |
| secretary                            | suppose                               |
| silence                              |                                       |
| somebody                             |                                       |

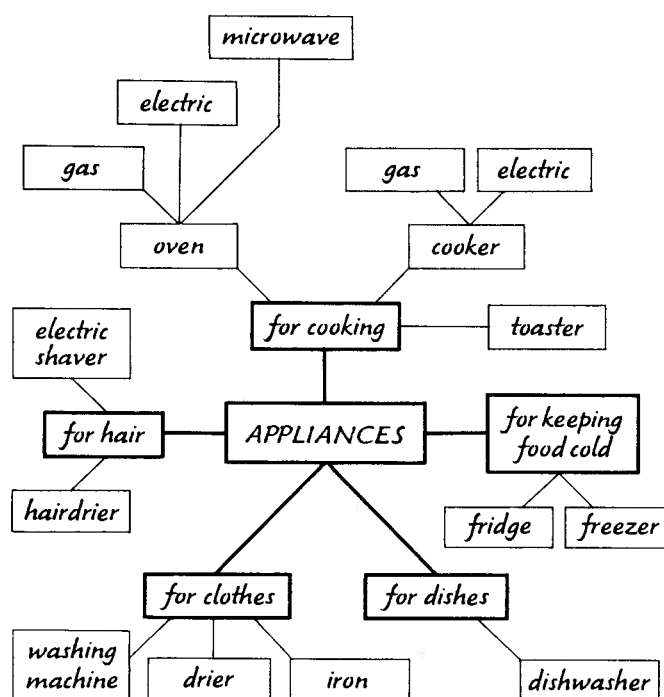
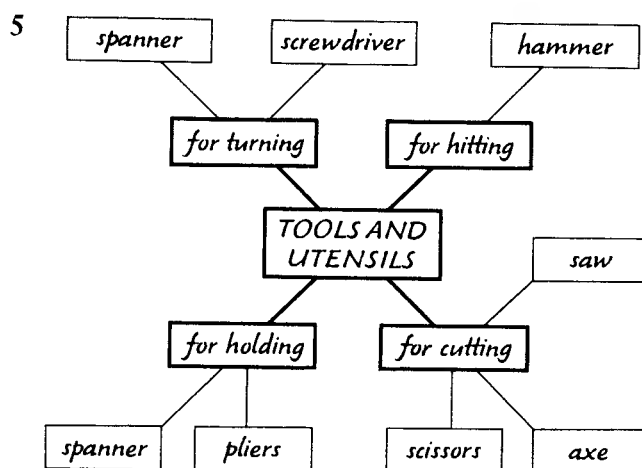
- 4
1. you to
  2. if
  3. me to
  4. urgent
  5. afraid
  6. have to
  7. been trying
  8. must
  9. won't
  10. to
  11. us to
  12. been waiting
  13. for
  14. must
  15. month
  16. by
  17. have to
  18. goes

## Lesson 34

### 1 (Possible answers)

3. If he hadn't been really late, he wouldn't have decided to drive instead of taking the bus.
4. If he hadn't been worried about being late, he would have closed the house door properly.
5. He wouldn't have got out of the car to close it if he hadn't seen it was open.
6. He wouldn't have locked the car with the keys inside if he hadn't been in a hurry.
7. If he hadn't run back into the house to get the other car key, he wouldn't have knocked a jar of jam all over the kitchen.
8. If he had read the paper that morning, he would have known that the main road to his office was closed for repairs.
9. If he hadn't been really late, there would have been places left in his office car park.
10. He wouldn't have spent twenty minutes looking for a parking place if he had taken the bus.
11. His boss wouldn't have given some of his work to his colleague Janice if she hadn't thought he was ill.
12. If his boss hadn't given him a new project, he wouldn't have worked with a/that firm of architects.
13. He wouldn't have met his old school friend again if the boss had given the job to someone else.
14. If Janice hadn't already started on Chris's old project, the boss would have given Janice the job with the firm of architects.

- 2
1. love
  2. angry
  3. police
  4. lost
  5. put
  6. local
  7. phoned
  8. animal
  9. adopt
  10. car
  11. arm
  12. turn
  13. fish
  14. oil
  15. fish
  16. injured



## Lesson 35

### 1 (Possible answers)

- I last went to a petrol station to buy some petrol.  
 I last went to a travel agent's to find out about holidays in Ireland.  
 I last went to an airport to meet a friend from America.  
 I last went to a bus stop to catch a bus.  
 I last went to a garage to buy new tyres for my car.  
 I last went to a station enquiry office to find out about trains to Bradford.  
 I last went to a police station to report a burglary.  
 I last went to a post office to buy some stamps.  
 I last went to a bank to change some money.

- 2
2. ..., don't you?
  3. ..., are you?
  4. ..., does she?
  5. ..., doesn't she?
  6. ..., isn't it?
  7. ..., aren't they?
  8. ..., haven't you?
  9. ..., does he?
  10. ..., don't you?

- 3
1. somebody
  2. anything
  3. everybody
  4. Something
  5. Nobody
  6. anybody
  7. everything
  8. nothing
- 4
1. ... or you can have three weeks in Cairo, return air fare, hotel room and full board, and a choice of excursions, for £1,500 inclusive.
  2. What time is the next train to Godalming?
  3. First on the right, second on the left. You can't miss it.
  4. How long do you want to leave it for?
  5. Do you mind if I open a window?
  6. You go back down the road and stop the traffic. I'll phone for an ambulance.
  7. 'How often are they supposed to run?'  
'Every ten minutes.'  
'The last one didn't stop, you know. It just went straight on.'
  8. Have you got any hand baggage?
  9. 'Do you know how fast you were going, sir?'  
'Er, about 40.'  
'You were doing 55, sir. Have you been drinking?'
  10. Fill up with unleaded, please. And could you check the oil and the tyre pressures?
  11. Hello, darling. I'm going to be a bit late, I'm afraid. There's a traffic jam a mile long.
  12. We shall shortly be taking off on our flight to Rome. Please observe the no-smoking sign and ensure that your seat belt is fastened and your seat back is in the upright position.
  13. Could you take me to Victoria, please?
  14. It's making a funny noise, and it's very difficult to start from cold. And I think the brakes need checking. And it needs a service.

### Lesson 36

- 1 (Possible answers)
- There's a TV on the chair. It should be on the table.  
There's a stool on the table. It should be on the floor.  
There's a saucepan under the table. It should be in the kitchen.  
There's a lamp on the window-sill. It should be on the table.  
There are some books under the piano. They should be on the shelves.  
There's a carpet against the wall. It should be on the floor.  
There's a chair on the piano.  
There's a teapot under the piano. It should be in the kitchen.  
There's a fridge in the living room. It should be in the kitchen.  
There are some books in the fridge. They should be on the shelves.  
There's a vase on the fridge. It should be on the shelves.  
There's a light bulb in the vase. It should be in the lamp.  
There are some toothbrushes in a glass on the top shelf.  
They should be in the bathroom.  
There are some flowers on the top shelf. They should be in the vase.  
There's a telephone on the top shelf. It should be on the table.  
There are some shoes on one of the shelves. They should be in the bedroom.  
There is a bread bin on one of the shelves. It should be in the kitchen.  
There is a football on one of the shelves. It should be in the cupboard.  
There is a bottle of milk on the bottom shelf. It should be in the fridge.

- 2
1. at
  2. for
  3. on
  4. off, down
  5. to
  6. up, away
  7. back
  8. on, out
  9. out of
  10. down
- 3
- | WHO? | WHO(M)? | WHOSE? | WHOSE? | -          |
|------|---------|--------|--------|------------|
| I    | me      | my     | mine   | myself     |
| you  | you     | your   | yours  | yourself   |
| he   | him     | his    | his    | himself    |
| she  | her     | her    | hers   | herself    |
| it   | it      | its    | -      | itself     |
| we   | us      | our    | ours   | ourselves  |
| you  | you     | your   | yours  | yourselves |
| they | them    | their  | theirs | themselves |
- 4
1. (garden) wall
  2. gate
  3. sink
  4. tap
  5. garden
  6. roof
  7. washbasin
  8. light
  9. door
  10. cupboard
  11. ceiling
  12. wall
  13. window
  14. floor
  15. carpet
  16. shelf

### Summary F

- 1
1. What time does she get up?
  2. When was the church built?  
OR: When did Wren build the church?
  3. What are you waiting for?
  4. Why was he sacked?
  5. Where are you going (on holiday)?
  6. Where do you usually sit?
  7. How does he travel?
  8. How was he killed?
- 2
1. news
  2. back
  3. yet
  4. still
  5. same
  6. yet
  7. nice
  8. already
  9. work
  10. still
  11. still
  12. months
  13. must
  14. already
  15. believe
  16. remember
  17. boss
  18. must
  19. See

- 3
2. I have been trying to phone him all day.
  3. We have been living in this house for about twelve years.
  4. Janet has been practising the violin all afternoon.
  5. I have been waiting for a letter from my father for weeks.
  6. How long have you been learning English?
  7. People have been fighting each other for millions of years.
  8. They have been talking for a long time.
  9. It has been raining since I got up this morning.
- 5 The correct sequence for the pictures is E, C, F, H, B, A, D, I, G. (But variations are acceptable in the middle.)

## Revision F

- 1
1. ice-hockey
  2. football
  3. badminton
  4. table tennis
  5. snooker
  6. cricket
  7. rugby
  8. baseball
  9. basketball
  10. tennis
  11. bowling
- 2
1. there are
  2. there have (ever) been
  3. There will be
  4. there were
  5. there is
  6. There was
  7. There has been
  8. there would be
- 3 (Possible answers)
1. Yes, please. / No, thanks.
  2. I'd love to. / I'm afraid I can't.
  3. Yes, OK. / No, thanks.
  4. Thank you. / No, I'll keep it on, thanks.
  5. Yes, please. / No, it's OK, thanks.
  6. Yes, please. / No, leave it open, please.

6

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| E | N | V | E | L | O | P | E |   |   | S | T | U | F | F |
| I |   | A |   |   |   |   | A |   | A |   | S |   |   | A |
| G | E | T |   | H | A | I | R | D | R | E | S | S | E | R |
| H |   |   | O | I | L |   |   | I | M |   | T | R | U | E |
| T | R | A | N | S | L | A | T | E |   | O | R |   | R |   |
|   | A |   |   |   |   | S |   |   |   | A | G | O |   |   |
| S | T | I | L | L |   |   | J | O | B |   | I |   | P |   |
| O |   |   | O |   | F |   | U | P |   | A | G | R | E | E |
| A | E | R | O | P | L | A | N | E |   |   | H |   |   |   |
| P |   |   | K |   | Y |   | E | N | D |   | T | H | E | Y |